



EL-MONASSER

GUIDE



New

Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

& King Lear

FREE GIFT
FOR SALE

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

للفصل الثاني الثانوي



معك

Ma3ak App

تطبيق

التعلم التفاعلي

2nd Sec.
2023

SECOND TERM



AnyScanner

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة❖ **Reading :**

An extract from the novel 'The Secret Garden' by Frances Hodgson Burnett

❖ **Writing :**

A diary entry by a student who is living abroad

❖ **Listening :**

Voice messages from students who are studying abroad

❖ **Speaking :**

Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad

❖ **Language :**

Present continuous; Stative verbs

❖ **Life skills :**

- Critical thinking ; Showing respect for people from different cultures



• بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
• Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
• التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

لإنقاز
الوحدة



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تتويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

come across (phr. v)	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة	independent(adj)	مستقل - معتمد
determination(n)	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد		على نفسه
encouragement(n)	التشجيع	pick(ed) ... up (phr. v)	يُقَلِّ / يوصل - يلتقط
get used to	يعتاد علي	pick-up (n)	شاحنة صغيرة
host family(n)	عائلة مضييفة	struggle (n)	كفاح - نضال
		struggle(d) (v)	يُكَافح - يُناضل - يثابر

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تتويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abroad(adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	explain(ed) (v)	يُفسِّر - يوضح
accommodation(n)	إقامة - سَكَن	explore(d) (v)	يستكشف - يستجلي - يتفحص
activity(n)	نشاط		
afterwards(adv)	فيما بعد	extract(n)	مقتطف - اقتباس
annoy(ed) (v)	يضايق	gardener(n)	بُستاني
bell(n)	جَرَس	harbour(n)	مَرَسِي - مرفأ
biology(adv)	علم الأحياء	lamb(n)	حَمَل (صغير الغنم) - لحم الضأن
celebration(n)	احتفال	lonely(adj)	شاعر بالوحدة
certificate(n)	شهادة	maid(n)	خادِمة - وصيفة
challenge(d) (n - v)	تَحَدِّي - يتحدى	main(adj)	أساسي / رئيسي
climber(n)	مُتسلق	move(d) (v)	ينتقل - يتحرك - يُحرِّك
concentrate(d) (v)	يُرَكِّز - ينتبه بشدة	normal(adj)	طبيعي - عادي
conditions(n)	ظروف - أوضاع - شروط	publish(ed) (v)	يُنشر (كتاب - مقال ...)
confident(adj)	واثق - متفائل	secret(n/adj)	سِرّ - سِرِّي
confused(adj)	متحير - مرتبك	servant(n)	خادم - خادِمة
creature(n)	مخلوق - كائن		

current(adj)	حالي - جاري	specific(adj)	مُحدّد - مخصوص
degree(n)	درجة / شهادة جامعية	stressed(adj)	مضغوط - مُثقل بالأعباء
distract(ed) (v)	يششت - يصرف انتباه	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
distracted(adj)	مُشتّت	temporary(adj)	مؤقت - غير دائم
drought(n)	الجفاف	understandable(adj)	مفهوم - معقول
experience(d) (v)	يمر بموقف - يعيش تجربة	volunteer(ed) (v - n)	متطوع - يتطوع
experience(n)	تجربة - مغامرة	weigh(ed) (v)	يَزن - يفكر ملياً
		whistle(d) (v - n)	يُصفر - صافرة

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جداً.

تنويه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
come across (phr. v) يصادف - يجد ... بالصدفة	to meet, find, or discover someone or something by chance بالصدفة
determination(n) إصرار - عزم - عزيمة	the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult
encouragement(n) التشجيع - حافز	- the act of encouraging somebody to do something - something that encourages somebody
get used to يعتاد علي	to have experienced يُحرّب something so that it no longer يبدو seems surprising, difficult, strange etc.
host family(n) عائلة مضيفة	a family which provides وجبات board and lodging to students, usually for a fee أجر
independent(adj) مُستقل - معتمد على نفسه	confident واثق and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people
pick ... up(phr. v) يُقلّ / يوصل	to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere
struggle (v) يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر	to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. "My parents often encourage me to do my best." The noun of the verb "encourage" is
(امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة الصباحية)
a. encouraging b. encouragingly c. encouraged d. encouragement
2. I was happy when I started to working outdoors on farms.
a. pick up b. determine c. get used to d. come across
3. I sent my driver to my son from his school.
a. pick up b. determine c. get used to d. come across
4. I was a stranger in London; I stayed with a family during my four-year study there.
a. distracted b. stressed c. host d. hostess
5. All parents to provide their children with their basic needs.
a. struggle b. encourage c. depend d. include
6. In 1956, Egypt was declared
a. lonely b. distracted c. determined d. independent
7. is a good quality that helps people achieve their goals.
a. Determination b. Presentation c. Encouragement d. Experience
8. I Salah while I was in London. I hadn't expected to see him there.
a. picked up b. determined c. got used to d. came across

2 Important vocabulary

9. Students like it when they have a/an they can meet.
a. whistle b. challenge c. entry d. sound
10. When a lesson is, I can depend on myself.
a. understandable b. stressed c. confused d. confident
11. I find it strange that he feels although he has several close friends.
a. confused b. distracted c. determined d. lonely
12. I got when the manager gave me too many instructions.
a. understandable b. independent c. confused d. confident
13. It was funny when the referee's didn't work.
a. whistle b. challenge c. entry d. sound
14. The more problems you face, the more you gain.
a. determination b. presentation c. encouragement d. experience
15. He was a kind master who never asked his to do hard jobs.
a. servants b. leaders c. volunteers d. grandparents

16. I am to achieve my goal and join the faculty of medicine.
a. picked up b. determined c. got used d. come across
17. Don't ask him to do any more jobs. He is already
a. understandable b. stressed c. independent d. confident
18. When children things for the first time, they may be worried and make mistakes.
a. experience b. distract c. publish d. sound
19. This woman works as a in this house where she does the housework.
a. servant b. maid c. volunteer d. a & b
20. Last year's destroyed most of the forests in the area.
a. diary b. accent c. draught d. drought
21. He is thin. He only 34 kilograms.
a. explores b. feels c. weighs d. wishes
22. The noise my children were making me.
a. concentrated b. distracted c. determined d. missed
23. Walid to look after the old lady.
a. stressed b. confused c. volunteered d. sounded
24. I have missed the train. I will the possibility of taking a bus.
a. explore b. feel c. give d. wish
25. Sama is intelligent. I am that she will make the correct choice.
a. understandable b. stressed c. confused d. confident

3 Definitions

26. '.....' is something that motivates somebody.
a. Presentation b. Encouragement c. Experience d. Determination
27. '.....' means to have experienced something so that it no longer seems surprising, difficult, strange etc.
a. Get used to b. All in all c. Come across d. Keep in touch
28. The adjective '.....' means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.
a. independent b. dependent c. confused d. stressed
29. To someone up means to let someone get into your car, boat etc. and take them somewhere.
a. struggle b. weigh c. back d. pick
30. means the quality of trying to do something even when it is difficult.
a. Presentation b. Encouragement c. Experience d. Determination

31. The verb '.....' means to try extremely hard to achieve something, even though it is very difficult.
a. challenge b. encourage c. struggle d. distract
32. '.....' means to meet, find, or discover someone or something by chance.
a. Get used to b. All in all c. Come across d. Keep in touch
33. A family provides board and lodging to students, usually for a fee أجر.
a. guest b. big c. host d. hostess

Part II Vocabulary Study

سأعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد وحل تدرّباته.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	independent	يصبح مستقل	have	a great time	يقضي وقتًا رائعًا
do	an action / activity	يقوم بعمل / نشاط	have	a break	يأخذ استراحة
	my best	أبذل ما في وسعي		... for dinner	يتناول ... على العشاء
feel	quite confused	يشعر بالحيرة إلى حد ما	play	fun	يمرح
find	a big difference	يجد اختلافًا كبيرًا		the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار
get	distracted	يتشتت	share	the experience	يعيش التجربة مع
make	notes on	يدون ملاحظات عن	show	respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ
perform	an action / activity	يقوم بعمل / نشاط			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
come across	بصادف - يجد بالصدفة
confident	متفائل
confused	متحير - مرتبك
distracted	مُشتت
encourage	يُشجّع
encouragement	التشجيع
explore	يستجلي - يتفحص - يُمعِن التفكير في
	encounter, find by chance, meet by chance
	optimistic, hopeful
	puzzled, at a loss, at sixes and sevens
	inattentive, confused, puzzled
	motivate, inspire, urge
	inspiration, motivation, urging
	look at

independent	مستقل - معتمد على نفسه	self-reliant, self-supporting
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة - منطوي	lonesome, solitary, by oneself
pick ... up	يُقل / يوصل	collect
struggle	يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر	strive, do one's best, spare no effort, compete

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
confident	متفائل / يائس
distracted	مشتت / منته
encourage	يُثبِّط العزيمة
encouragement	تشجيع - توهين
independent	مستقل - معتمد على نفسه
lonely	شاعر بالوحدة - منطوي
struggle	يُكافح - يُناضل - يثابر
pessimistic, hopeless	متشائم / يائس
attentive	منتبه
discourage	يُثبِّط العزيمة
discouragement	تشجيع - توهين
dependent	متوكل - خاضع
sociable	اجتماعي
give up, surrender	يستسلم - يُذعن

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

determination		
determine (v)	يُصمم - يحدد	- The police determined the cause of the accident.
determination (n)	إصرار / تصميم / عزيمة - تحديد	- Determination helps you succeed.
determined (adj)	مُصمم - عازم	- He is determined to achieve his goals in life.
encouragement		
encourage (v)	يُشجّع - يُحفِّز	- I work hard because you have encouraged me.
encouragement (n)	التشجيع	- I work hard because of your encouragement.
encouraging (adj)	مُشجّع / مُحفِّز	- Thank you for your encouraging words.
host		
host (v)	يستضيف	- Mr Ashraf offered to host us in his house.
host (n)	مضيف / مضيف	- Mr Ashraf offered to be our host.
hostess (n)	مستضيفة / مضييفة	- We thanked our hostess.

independent		
depend (v)	يعتمد - يُعَوِّل	- You should depend on yourself.
dependence (n)	اعتماد/تعويل - تَوَاكَل	- Dependence on yourself is a good quality.
independence (n)	استقلال - اعتماد على النفس	- Independence is a good quality.
dependent (adj)	معتمد على غيره - متوكل	- You should be dependent on yourself.
independent (adj)	مُسْتَقِل - معتمد على نفسه	- Being independent is a good quality.
dependently (adv)	بتوكل	- You shouldn't behave dependently .
independently (adv)	باستقلالية	- You should behave independently .
struggle		
struggle (v)	يُكَافِح - يُنَاضِل - يثابر	- We admire the way you struggle to succeed.
struggle (n)	كفاح - نضال - معافرة	- We admire your struggle to succeed.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a novel by	رواية من تأليف	different from / to	مختلف عن
a short time later	بعد وقت قصير	feel like (+ n / gerund)	
at first	في البداية		يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في
at the beginning of	في بداية	for example,	علي سبيل المثال
at this time of year	في هذا الوقت من العام	help on a farm	يساعد في أعمال المزرعة
be confident with	مُتَمَكِّن من	on his own	بمفرده
be far away from	يبتعد عن - يكون بعيداً عن	That's all I can do	هذا كل ما يمكنني عمله
by yourself	بمفردك	There was nothing to do	لم يكن هناك شيء يقوم به

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

come across	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة	struggle to	يكافح لكي
come into	يدخل	struggle with	يُكَافِح في
come to + inf.	يصير - يصبح	talk about	يتحدث عن
decide to	يقرر أن	talk to/with	يتحدث إلي (شخص)
look around	ينظر حول - يبحث في	think of / about	يُفَكِّر في
look out of	ينظر للخارج من خلال	travel across	يسافر عبر
move to	ينتقل إلي	work as	يعمل ك (+ وظيفة)
plan to	يخطط أن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

servant - maid

• servant

- He was kind to all the servants in his house.

خادم (رجل أو امرأة)

لاحظ أن :

• civil servant

- My father is a civil servant.

موظف عمومي (حكومي)

• maid

- Mr Omar asked the maid to water the plants in the balcony.

خادمة / وصيفة (تطلق على الأنثى فقط)

experiment - experience - experienced - expert

• experiment (n)

- Mr Hossam is doing an experiment in his laboratory.

تجربة علمية

• experience (n)

- Travelling gives us so much experience.

الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعدّ)

• experience (n)

- Getting lost in my first visit to Cairo is an experience I will never forget.

تجربة حياتية - موقف (كلمة تُعدّ)

• experience (v)

- We experienced some difficult problems in 2020.

يمر بتجربة - يعايش - يواجه

• experienced (in) (adj)

- My grandfather was experienced in farming.

ذو خبرة - مُحَنَّك

• expert (in / on) (n)

- Mr Hossam is an expert in teaching English.
- She is an expert on heart disease.

خبير (في) (تستخدم كاسم)

• expert (in / on / at) (adj)

- Mr Hossam is expert in (on / at) teaching English.

خبير (في) (تستخدم كصفة)

lonely - alone

• lonely = lonesome (adj)

- I feel sorry for that lonely old woman.
- He leads a very lonely life with no friends.

شاعر بالعزلة - منطوي

• lonely = remote / desolate (adj)

- This old man lives in a lonely farmhouse.

ناء - مُنْعَزَل

• alone = by (myself / yourself ...) = on (my / your ... own) (adj)

- After their son had got married, they lived alone.
- = After their son had got married, they lived by themselves.
- = After their son had got married, they lived on their own.

بمفرده - وحده (هذه الصفة لا تسبق الاسم)

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When I moved from my village to Cairo, I big differences in lifestyle and behaviour.
a. worked b. showed c. did d. found
2. Lonely and give the same meaning.
a. sociable b. of his own c. off his own d. lonesome
3. Distracted and give antonymous meanings.
a. confused b. attentive c. inattentive d. puzzled
4. Your words are great to me.
a. encourage b. encouraged c. encouraging d. encouragement
5. Whenever I remember them, your words me greatly.
a. encourage b. encouraged c. encouraging d. encouragement
6. I am greatly by your words.
a. encourage b. encouraged c. encouraging d. encouragement
7. Your words are greatly to me.
a. encourage b. encouraged c. encouraging d. encouragement
8. He never on others.
a. depends b. independent c. independently d. independence
9. from others is one of his best qualities.
a. Depends b. Independent c. Independently d. Independence
10. Behaving is one of his best qualities.
a. depends b. independent c. independently d. independence
11. Being of others is one of his best qualities.
a. depends b. independent c. independently d. independence
12. He always relies on his parents for nearly everything. Which of the following adjectives describes this person?
a. Dependent b. Independent c. Self-reliant d. Self-supporting
13. Our abilities play a role in the of our goals.
a. determine b. determines c. determined d. determination
14. Our abilities the goals we will be able to achieve.
a. determine b. determines c. determined d. determination
15. He is to look for a better job.
a. determine b. determines c. determined d. determination
16. She struggles her children well.
a. with educating b. to educate c. educating d. b & c
17. I came understand him only after I had known him well.
a. in b. out c. to d. up

18. I was happy when I came you. I hadn't expected to see you there.
a. around b. outside c. into d. across
19. Most people struggle the high cost of living. تكلفة المعيشة
a. with b. to c. by d. outside
20. Osman is a
a. dairy b. maid c. servant d. b & c
21. His work abroad gave him much
a. experience b. experiences c. experienced d. expert

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

The Secret Garden

(SB page 7)

The Secret Garden⁽¹⁾ is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published⁽²⁾ in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die⁽³⁾ and Mary moves⁽⁴⁾ to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid⁽⁵⁾ had come into her room.

"Are you my servant⁽⁶⁾?" she asked. "I'm Mrs Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?" Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked. "You can be independent⁽⁷⁾ and go out by yourself⁽⁸⁾. My brother is always exploring⁽⁹⁾ on his own,"⁽¹⁰⁾ said Martha. "There are some gardens⁽¹¹⁾, but it is winter so nothing is growing⁽¹²⁾ now. Oh, now Mrs Medlock's bell⁽¹³⁾ is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later⁽¹⁴⁾, Mary was in the gardens when she came across⁽¹⁵⁾ a small bird singing⁽¹⁶⁾ in some trees behind⁽¹⁷⁾ a wall. When she asked an old gardener⁽¹⁸⁾ about the bird, he whistled⁽¹⁹⁾ and the bird flew⁽²⁰⁾ to him.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) الحديقة السرية
- (2) يُنشر
- (3) يموت
- (4) تنتقل
- (5) خادمة - وصيفة
- (6) خادم
- (7) مُستقل
- (8) بمفردك
- (9) يتجول - يستكشف
- (10) بمفرده
- (11) بستان
- (12) نامي - كثيف
- (13) جرس
- (14) فيما بعد
- (15) يصادف
- (16) يُغرد - يصيح
- (17) خلف - وراء
- (18) بُستاني
- (19) يُصفّر
- (20) يطير

Speaker 3 :

Teen boy : Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day - today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch. I came home feeling really good!

Part IV**Language****Stative Verbs****الأفعال التقريرية****Types of Verbs أنواع الأفعال****1 Stative Verbs الأفعال التقريرية**

هي أفعال تصف حالة ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – love – hate – dislike – seem ... etc.

ex. - He is being happy. (X) - He is happy. (✓)

2 Dynamic (Action) Verbs أفعال الحركة

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة ويمكن أن تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

play – visit – build – help – write ... etc.

ex. - She is writing an essay. (✓) - She writes an essay. (✓)

3 Verbs that are both Dynamic and Stative الأفعال التقريرية والحركية

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة بمعنى معين وتُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، وتصف حالة بمعنى آخر ولا تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be – have – see – smell – taste

ex. - She is having lunch now. (✓) (يتناول)

- She has lunch at three o'clock. (✓) (يتناول)

- She is having a tablet. (X) (يمتلك) - She has a tablet. (✓) (يمتلك)

Most Important Stative Verbs أهم الأفعال التقريرية**1 Feelings and emotions أفعال الأحاسيس والمشاعر**

care	يهتم - يراعى	miss	يشاقق ل - يفتقد
desire	يرغب	need	يحتاج
dislike	يكره	please	يسعد
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل
impress	يُبهِّر - يؤثر في	satisfy	يُرضي - يُشبع

like	يحب	want	يريد
love	يحب	wish	يتمنى
mind	يُبالى / يمانع		

2 Measurement أفعال القياس

consist of	يتكون من	include	يشمل / يتضمن
contain	يحتوى على	measure	يبلغ مقاسه
cost	تبلغ تكلفته	suit	يناسب - يلائم
deserve	يستحق	weigh (=have weight)	يبلغ وزنه
fit	يناسب - يلائم		

3 Possession أفعال الملكية

belong	يخص / ينتمى إلى	own	يمتلك
have	يمتلك	possess	يمتلك
owe	يدين به (مال / معروف)		

4 Senses أفعال الحواس

feel	يعطى ملمس	see	يري
hear	يسمع	smell	يعطى رائحة ...
recognize	يتعرف على	taste	يعطى مذاق ...

5 States/Qualities أفعال الحالات / السمات

appear	يبدو / يظهر	seem	يبدو
exist	يوجد	sound	يبدو
look	يبدو		
resemble	يشبه		

6 Thoughts & Opinions أفعال التفكير والآراء

agree	يوافق	imagine	يتخيل
believe	يعتقد / يظن	know	يعرف
concern	يهم - يشغل بال	matter	يهم
deny	ينكر	mean	يعني - يقصد
depend	يعتمد على	remember	يتذكر
disagree	يرفض	suppose	يفترض
doubt	يشك في	suspect	يشك في
feel (=have an opinion)	يعتقد / يظن	think (=have an opinion)	يعتقد / يظن
forget	ينسى	understand	يفهم

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات هامة على الأفعال التقريرية

❶ لا تُستخدم الأفعال التقريرية بالمعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة في الأزمنة المستمرة، ويتم استخدام أقرب زمن بسيط حسب معنى الجملة:

- Mr Nasser is having a BMW. (مضارع مستمر) (X)
- Mr Nasser has a BMW. (مضارع بسيط) (✓)
- I have been knowing him for 6 years. (مضارع تام مستمر) (X)
- I have known him for 6 years. (مضارع تام بسيط) (✓)
- The tank was containing 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي مستمر) (X)
- The tank contained 45 litres of petrol. (ماضي بسيط) (✓)
- She had been owning a large villa. (ماضي تام مستمر) (X)
- She had owned a large villa. (ماضي تام بسيط) (✓)

❷ يمكن استخدام الأفعال التقريرية بمعاني غير المعاني المذكورة في الجدول السابق في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- I am having (=eating) lunch now. (المعنى يتناول وليس يمتلك)
- She is having (=spending) a great time. (المعنى تقضي وليس تمتلك)



Important Exceptions

استثناءات هامة

في الجدول التالي سيتم إلقاء الضوء على أهم الأفعال التقريرية التي تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة بمعاني أخرى غير المعاني المذكورة في الجداول السابقة:

الفعل Verb	Stative usage (لا يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)	Dynamic meaning (يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)
1. be	am / is / are / was / were: يكون / يوجد - Nada is being very ill. (X) - Nada is very ill. (✓)	am / is / are / was / were + being يصبح - يتصرف - Nada is boring. (✓) = She is boring by nature. - Nada is being boring. (✓) = She is temporarily boring.
	Note: - يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة ويأتي بعده اسم أو صفة للحديث عن أحداث أو تصرفات وليس عن مشاعر أو وصف حالة دائمة: - He was being very silly. (= He was behaving in a silly way). - Sara is being stupid. (= Sara is doing stupid things).	

	<p>- لا يُستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسى فى الأزمنة المستمرة للحديث عن مشاعر:</p> <p>- I am being sad now. (X)</p> <p>- I am sad now. (✓)</p>	
2. feel	<p>feel يشعر</p> <p>يعتقد - يعطى ملمس</p> <p>- I am feeling he is right. (X)</p> <p>- I feel he is right. (✓)</p> <p>- The floor is feeling smooth. (X)</p> <p>- The floor feels smooth. (✓)</p>	<p>feel يشعر</p> <p>- He is feeling better today. (✓)</p> <p>- I am feeling hot. (✓)</p> <p>- She was feeling very tired yesterday. (✓)</p>
3. have	<p>have / has / had: يمتلك</p> <p>- He is having a villa. (X)</p> <p>- He has a villa. (✓)</p> <p>- She was having a bike. (X)</p> <p>- She had a bike. (✓)</p>	<p>have = eat / drink / spend</p> <p>يأكل / يشرب / يقضى</p> <p>- I am having a nice time. (✓)</p> <p>= I am spending a nice time.</p> <p>- We were having fish. (✓)</p> <p>= We were eating fish.</p>
4. look	<p>look يبدو</p> <p>- Mum is looking tired. (X)</p> <p>- Mum looks tired. (✓)</p>	<p>look ينظر / يبحث</p> <p>- I am looking at the screen. (✓)</p> <p>- She was looking for a pen. (✓)</p>
5. measure	<p>measure يبلغ مقاسه</p> <p>- This room is measuring four metres long. (X)</p> <p>- This room measures four metres long. (✓)</p>	<p>measure يقيس</p> <p>- He is measuring the length of the room. (✓)</p> <p>- I was measuring the diameter قطر of the circle. (✓)</p>
6. see	<p>see يرى</p> <p>- He is seeing some fish in the clear water. (X)</p> <p>- He sees some fish in the clear water. (✓)</p>	<p>see يقابل</p> <p>- I am seeing some friends in the club tomorrow. (✓)</p> <p>- She has been seeing the dentist in the afternoon. (✓)</p>
7. smell	<p>smell يعطى رائحة - له رائحة</p> <p>- This meat is smelling delicious. (X)</p> <p>- This meat smells delicious. (✓)</p>	<p>smell يشم</p> <p>- I am smelling the cake. (✓)</p> <p>- Sama was smelling the new bottle of perfume. (✓)</p>

8. taste	يعطى مذاق - له مذاق taste - This soup is tasting salty. (X) - This soup tastes salty. (✓)	يذوق - يتذوق taste - Mum is tasting the soup. (✓) - The chef was tasting the rice. (✓)
9. think	يعتقد think - I am thinking she is ill. (X) - I think she is ill. (✓)	يفكر think - I am thinking about the best solution to this problem. (✓)
10. weigh	يبلغ وزنه weigh - This apple is weighing 70 grams. (X) - This apple weighs 70 grams. (✓)	يَزن weigh - The butcher is weighing the meat. (✓) - Ali was weighing the bag of rice. (✓)

General Exercise

On Language

● Apply

• مختارات من امتحانات الإدارات فرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

تنويه

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started

- I you are right.
a. knowing b. am knowing c. know d. was knowing
- He a large villa.
a. own b. owns c. owning d. is owning
- Sama her meal right now.
a. has had b. is having c. had d. have
- I Rodayna is a good girl.
a. believe b. believes c. am believing d. was believed
- This suggestion good.
a. sounding b. is sounding c. sound d. sounds
- I won't buy this car because it too much money.
a. is costing b. costing c. costs d. cost
- When I am away, I my family very much.
a. am missing b. missed c. misses d. miss
- Children kittens.
a. are loving b. are being loved c. love d. are loved

9. I really staying on my own. It makes me feel lonely.
 a. like b. don't like c. am liking d. am not liking
10. Nada like her mother.
 a. looks b. is looking c. is looked d. is being looked
11. people should work in their 70s or 80s?
 a. Are you thinking b. You are thinking
 c. Do you thinking d. Do you think
12. I have to change my tight shoes. These me.
 a. kill b. are killing c. killed d. were killing
13. Coming to Sharm for holiday has been a great idea. I it here.
 a. love b. am loved c. am loving d. am being loved
14. I people who never really listen to what you say.
 a. am hating b. hate c. hated d. am hated
15. Everyone fun. It is such a beautiful day.
 a. has b. have c. is having d. are having
16. Some people bottles of water in their hand. It's hot and they're thirsty.
 a. are holding b. are held c. hold d. holds

2 Special cases

17. I you are right.
 a. think b. thinking c. am thinking d. thinks
18. I of a way to solve this complicated problem. Don't distract me.
 a. think b. thinking c. am thinking d. thinks
19. This sauce great.
 a. taste b. tastes c. tasting d. is tasting
20. Mum the sauce I have prepared. I hope she will like it.
 a. taste b. tasted c. tasting d. is tasting
21. We these tomatoes to see how heavy they are.
 a. weigh b. weighing c. are weighing d. weighs
22. I 85 kilograms. I need to follow a diet.
 a. weigh b. weighing c. am weighing d. weighs
23. The police dog these passengers' bags for drugs.
 a. smell b. smells c. is smelling d. have smelt
24. These flowers good.
 a. smell b. smells c. are smelling d. have smelt

25. He talking about his personal life. He cares about his privacy.
 a. likes b. is liking c. dislikes d. is disliking
26. I what I say! Do you hear me?
 a. mean b. am meaning c. am meant d. a & b
27. This shirt you. Try another one.
 a. is fitting b. isn't fitting c. fits d. doesn't fit
28. I Dr Mustafa tonight.
 a. see b. am seeing c. had seen d. am seen
29. Rodayna everything quite clearly. She is intelligent.
 a. realises b. doesn't realise c. is realising d. isn't realising
30. He strange noises now and then.
 a. hear b. hears c. is hearing d. is heard
31. The situation on your decision.
 a. depend b. depends c. is depending d. is depended
32. The price of the meal..... the drinks.
 a. include b. is including c. isn't including d. includes
33. Everyone this beautiful spring weather.
 a. enjoy b. is enjoyed c. are enjoying d. is enjoying

3 Check your understanding

34. "My friends and I have arranged to meet for an informal dinner tomorrow."
 This means
 a. I see my friends for dinner an informal tomorrow.
 b. My friends see me for an informal dinner tomorrow.
 c. I am seeing my friends for an informal dinner tomorrow.
 d. a & b
35. Which of the following is structurally correct?
 a. She is looking exhausted. b. She looks exhausted.
 c. She is seeming exhausted. d. a & c
36. Which of the following is structurally correct?
 a. Silk feels soft. b. Silk is feeling soft.
 c. Silk is seeming soft. d. Silk is being soft.

• ذاکر القاعدة جيذا واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

تنويه



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

all in all,	في المُجْمَل - بصفة عامة	imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل
believe(d) (v)	يؤمن - يُصدّق	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد - يفوته
dear diary	ذكري عزيزة - ذكري لا تُنسى	taste(d) (v - n)	يعطي مذاق - يتذوق
feel - felt(v)	يشعر - يلمس - يتحسس		مذاق -
forget - forgot -	ينسي	think - thought(v)	يعتقد - يفكر
forgotten(v)		wish(ed) (v - n)	يتمنى - أمنية

• من الفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accent(n)	لهجة	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يُحيي ذكري	organise(d) (v)	يُنظّم
conversation(n)	محادثة	Parthenon(n)	معبد البارثينون
culture(n)	ثقافة - حضارة	passport(n)	جواز سفر
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
diary(n)	مفكرة يوميات	sound(ed) (v)	يبدو
entry(n)	مُقتطف - مدخل	storm(n)	عاصفة
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	summarise(d) (v)	يُلخّص - يختصر
Greece(n)	اليونان	text message(n)	رسالة نصية
include(d) (v)	يتضمّن - يُضمّن	unfortunately(adv)	لسوء الحظ
Londoners(n)	اللندنين (سكان لندن)	voice messages(n)	رسائل صوتية

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

تنويه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise

all in all

في المُجْمَل - بصفة عامة

Understand

considering every part of a situation

keep in touch

يبقي على تواصل

when people keep in touch, they see, talk to, or write to each other often

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I think the movie isn't bad. , it's considered a good one.

(امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)

- a. All in all b. All of them c. Not at all d. All of it
2. Meeting you for the first time is a/an I will never forget.
a. all in all b. until tomorrow c. get used to d. dear diary
3. I have my tablet at home, so I can't log on the internet.
a. come across b. forgotten c. sounded d. weighed
4. I prefer the chips that of hot pepper and lemon.
a. imagine b. taste c. encourages d. determines
5. The blind man used his stick to his way.
a. explore b. feel c. weigh d. wish
6. I can't how life was like in the past without mobile phones, computers and the internet.
a. imagine b. dream c. encourage d. determine
7. I'll get you a cold drink if you
a. explore b. feel c. weigh d. wish

2 Important vocabulary

8. Not all information is in the report. It should have been included.
a. celebrated b. forgotten c. sounded d. mentioned
9. A diary is a collection of pages on a diary.
a. milk b. entry c. entire d. title
10. This meeting has been by Mr Ayman.
a. felt b. believed c. organised d. sounded
11. I don't understand the Arabic which the people from Tunisia, Algeria and Morocco speak.
a. diaries b. accents c. cultures d. droughts
12. It like a mad plan to go swimming in that windy weather.
a. experienced b. struggled c. volunteered d. sounded
13. My name isn't in the squad. I am out.
a. included b. missed c. forgotten d. sounded

14. To, El-Moasser is the most professional educational book.
a. sound b. summarise c. organise d. mention
15. People who live in Europe have a/an different from that of the Arabs.
a. dairy b. accent c. culture d. drought
16. We Sama's birthday on July 7th.
a. celebrate b. summarise c. sound d. mention
17. When he didn't answer my call, I sent him a message.
a. text b. voice c. flight d. a & b

3 Definitions

18. '.....' is used to show that you are considering every part of a situation.
a. Get used to b. All in all c. Come across d. Pick up
19. When people, they see, talk to, or write to each other often.
a. get lost b. pick up c. come out d. keep in touch

Part II Vocabulary Study

تأليف
ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدرباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	busy with	ينشغل بـ	make	sure	يتأكد - يتيقن
become	friends	يصاحب		new friends	يُكوّن صداقات جديدة
do	a job	يؤدي عمل	miss	my family	أفتقد أسرتي
feel	at home	يشعر بالترحاب	study	abroad	يدرس بالخارج
get	better	يتحسن	taste	different	يعطي مذاق مختلف
	home	يصل للبيت	understand	their accent	يفهم لهجتهم
have	conversations	يجري حوارات	work	abroad	يعمل خارج البلاد
live	abroad	يعيش خارج البلاد			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
all in all,	في المُجمل - بصفة عامة
diary	مفكرة يوميات
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
	considering everything, on the whole, taking everything into account, taking everything into consideration
	journal
	unluckily

3 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from	يُبعد كثيراً عن	know what to do	يعرف ماذا يفعل
famous for	مشهور بـ	longer than usual	أطول من المعتاد
find it hard to	يجد صعوبة في أن	on time	في الوقت المحدد
for the first time	لأول مرة	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
go back home	يعود للبيت / للوطن	similar to	مشابه لـ
how well	ما مدي جودة / كفاءة	so far	حتى الآن
keep in touch	يبقي علي تواصل	until tomorrow	إلى الغد - ألقاك / أراسلك ... غداً
kind to me	طيب معي - رفيق بي		

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	stay with	يقيم مع
leave ... behind	ينسي أن يحضر ...	try to	يحاول أن
look after	يرعى - يعتنى بـ		

5 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

diary - dairy

- **diary = journal** مذكرّة / مفكرة يوميّات
 - My grandfather used to keep a diary.
 - I enjoy reading my childhood diary.
- **diary = journal** أجندة (سجل مكتوب للتذكير بالمهام اليومية)
 - I forgot to put the time of the flight in my diary.
- **dairy** معمل ألبان / شركة ألبان
 - Make sure that everything in the dairy is clean.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I have so many friends since I started secondary school.
a. done b. made c. felt d. understood
- When I first arrived in London, I found it difficult to people's accents. I usually asked them to repeat what they had said.
a. understand b. share c. taste d. find
- It is your duty واجب to make your guests at home.
a. do b. make c. feel d. understand
- Yesterday afternoon, I busy with preparing for my online test.
a. was b. showed c. studied d. had

5. My mother's food different.
a. understands b. shares c. tastes d. finds
6. The word '.....' gives the same meaning of 'journal'.
a. dairy b. diary c. entry d. b & c
7. "Unluckily, I missed my flight." The adverb 'unluckily' is an antonym of '.....'.
a. unfortunately b. luckily c. fortunately d. b & c
8. How did she do in the test?
a. good b. well c. much d. many
9. I have to say goodbye. tomorrow.
a. After b. Before c. On d. Until
10. The bus moved and left me
a. ahead b. behind c. on d. with
11. Don't worry. Rodayna knows
a. to do b. doing c. to doing d. what to do
12. He keeps a in which he writes about the important things that happen to him.
a. dairy b. diary c. servant d. maid
13. He works in a
a. dairy b. diary c. servant d. maid

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A diary⁽¹⁾ entry⁽²⁾ (SB page 11)

28th November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far⁽³⁾, but it hasn't always been easy.



When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents⁽⁴⁾ now. I enjoy listening to Londoners⁽⁵⁾ and trying to have conversations⁽⁶⁾ with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing? Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family⁽⁷⁾ that I'm staying with are really nice.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مفكرة يوميات
(2) مُقَتَّطَف
(3) حتى الآن
(4) لهجات
(5) اللندنيون (سكان لندن)
(6) محادثات
(7) عائلة مضييفة

(WB page 4)

Teen boy : Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry, I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm working here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I suppose⁽¹⁾ I'm becoming more independent though.

**Check Vocabulary**

- (1) يفترض
(2) على وجه الخصوص

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek music and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices of things in the shops! I'm trying to learn Greek but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English! So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss friends especially⁽²⁾ you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

Part IV Language

1 The Present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
Affirmation الإثبات	Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ... - I'm watching a film on TV at home. - Sama is drawing a picture. - They are playing tennis in the club right now.
Negation النفي	Subj. + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + (inf. + ing) ... - I am not watching a film on TV at the office. - Sama isn't writing a letter. - They aren't playing football in the club right now.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ? - Are you watching a film on TV at home ? - Is Sama drawing a picture? - Are they playing tennis in the club right now ?
'Wh_' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. أداة استفهام + am / is / are + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ? - Where are you watching a film? - Who is drawing a picture? - What are they doing in the club right now?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Object المفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ... - A film is being watched on TV at home (by me). - A picture is being drawn (by Sama). - Tennis is being played in the club right now (by Ahmed).
Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية	- now الآن - at the (this) moment اللحظة في هذه اللحظة - still - at present حالياً - currently في الوقت الحاضر - tomorrow غداً - in the future المستقبل - next القادم ...

Mini Test 1

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Salma and I cleaning the kitchen.
a. am b. am being c. are d. are being
- The kitchen
a. is cleaning b. is being cleaned c. are cleaning d. are being cleaned
- What in the kitchen?
a. is doing b. is being done c. are you doing d. b & c
- Is Nada the baby?
a. feeding b. being fed c. feeds d. fed
- Is the baby ?
a. feeding b. being fed c. feeds d. be fed
- Rodayna is revising for the exams
a. at the moment b. at that moment c. so far d. the other day

Usage

- يُستخدم المضارع المستمر في الحالات التالية:
١ وصف أو السؤال عن أحداث أو مواقف تحدث الآن (لحظة الكلام):

- ex.** - Omar is taking a shower, so he can't answer the phone.
- Are you watching this programme? - What are you doing?

٢ وصف مواقف أو أحداث في الحاضر تختلف عما كان سائداً أو مالوفاً في الماضي:

- ex. - Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.
- Currently, most businesses are communicating via emails.

٣ التعبير عن مواقف مستمرة تحدث حول المضارع وليس بالضرورة الآن وقد تستغرق مدي زمني طويل، ويمكن أن تستخدم تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

... لا يزال still - هذا العقد this decade - this year - this month - these days - tonight - today

- ex. - Ali is taking the final exams these days.
- I'm reading 'King Lear' today. - Are you still working in London?

٤ التعبير عن الضيق أو عدم الرضا عن أحداث يقوم بها الناس بشكل متكرر، وغالباً يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار (always – constantly) كالتالي:

... am / is / are + always / constantly / never... + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - You are always coming to school late, Moataz.
- Samar is constantly talking about herself.
- They're always complaining.

٥ وصف الصور (على اعتبار أن الحدث في الصورة مستمر):

- ex. - In the picture, everybody is having fun.

٦ التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أي التعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت معين في المستقبل، وفي هذه الحالة لابد من وجود تعبير زمني دال على المستقبل):

- ex. - My sister is getting married next month.

٧ عند التعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

- ex. - Lions are eating meat. (X) - Lions eat meat. (✓)

٨ عند التعبير عن العادات نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

- ex. - Mum is getting up early every day. (X)
- Mum gets up early every day. (✓)

٩ عند التعبير عن جداول المواعيد نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر:

- ex. - The first train to Cairo is leaving at six tomorrow. (X)
- The first train to Cairo leaves at six tomorrow. (✓)

١٠ نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والإدراك والمشاعر والملكية...):

- ex. - I am loving my mother. (X) - I love my mother. (✓)

Mini Test 2

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Karim can't go out with us. He for his exams.
a. is revising b. is being revised c. was revising d. was revised
- My car isn't available today. It at the garage.
a. was checking b. was being checked c. is checking d. is being checked

3. Sending letters is no longer common. Not many people using them.
a. communicates b. communicated c. are communicating d. communicating
4. Sama to be a doctor. I think she will achieve her goal.
a. study b. studied c. is studying d. was studying
5. You my charger, Ahmed. That's annoying.
a. always used b. are always using c. were always using d. a & b
6. It is arranged. I to New York next Friday.
a. am travelling b. am being travelled c. going to travel
d. am going to travel
7. Cows grass, not meat.
a. are eating b. are being eaten c. have eaten d. eat
8. I can't drink this tea. It too sweet.
a. taste b. is tasting c. tastes d. is tasted
9. My plane off at 6:55 tomorrow.
a. take b. takes c. is taking d. us being taken



Check your understanding

١ يمكن التعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية بالطرق التالية:

- 1- Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) ...
- 2- Subj. + have / has + prepared / arranged + to + inf. ...
- 3- Subj. + have / has + made arrangements + to + inf. ...
- 4- Everything + is + ready / prepared / arranged + for +

- Leen has arranged to meet her friends next Monday.
- = Leen is meeting her friends next Monday.
- Rokaya has made the final arrangements to give her birthday tomorrow.
- = Rokaya is giving her birthday tomorrow.

٢ لاحظ تحويل جملة المضارع التام المنفي إلى مضارع مستمر مثبت بالصيغة التالية:

- Subj. + haven't / hasn't + finished + (inf. + ing) ...
- Subj. + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing) ...
- Mariam hasn't finished feeding the baby yet.
- = Mariam is still feeding the baby.

Exercise

On Language

• التدريبات مُرتبة تصاعدياً طبقاً لمستويات التفكير حسب هرم بلوم

تنويه

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. We a party next Sunday.
a. are giving b. give c. going to give d. are given

2. I any books right now.
 a. do not read b. reads c. am not reading d. has read
3. with us tonight?
 a. He comes b. Does he come c. He is coming d. Is he coming
4. Why doing your homework? What a lazy boy!
 a. are you b. aren't you c. you are d. you aren't
5. Your work right now.
 a. is checking b. is to check c. has checked d. is being checked
6. The number of applicants throughout the whole period.
 a. increasing b. is increasing c. being increased d. be increased
7. I can see that the amount of this waste gradually.
 a. decrease b. decreases c. is decreasing d. are decreasing
8. to the radio or can I turn it off?
 a. Are you listening b. You listen c. Are you listened d. You are listening
9. Ahmed, you me when I speak. Stop it, please! It's so irritating.
 a. interrupt always b. always interrupt
 c. always are interrupting d. are always interrupting
10. No one of us a bike. You cannot ride a bike in this field.
 a. are riding b. is riding c. rides d. is ridden
11. Nobody They are not in a hurry.
 a. runs b. is being run c. run d. is running
12. I behind the camera. You cannot see me. This is not a selfie.
 a. stands b. am standing c. is stood d. has stood

2 Special cases

13. They me and I am sad about it.
 a. never helps b. always help c. never helping d. never help
14. or running?
 a. He is walking b. He walks c. Does he walk d. Is he walking
15. She the truth and it is annoying.
 a. never tell b. don't tell c. is never telling d. is always telling
16. I do not like her because she about everything.
 a. rarely complains b. always complain
 c. is never complaining d. is constantly complaining
17. They up early in the morning and they like it.
 a. always get b. always gets
 c. are always getting d. always are getting

18. My car down. I got tired of it.
 a. always break b. always breaks
 c. is always breaking d. b & c
19. Nowadays, I how to drive a car by a very good driving instructor.
 a. teach b. am teaching c. am being taught d. taught
20. Mona at Ain Shams Hospital on Thursdays and Fridays.
 a. is working b. works c. has worked d. have worked
21. Professor Ibrahim really knows his subject. He a lecture on social media at university every Wednesday.
 a. give b. gives c. is giving d. was giving
22. Professor Ibrahim really knows his subject. He a lecture on social media at university next Wednesday.
 a. give b. gives c. is giving d. was giving
23. I can see some people who their dogs. Their dogs are on a leash طوق.
 a. are walking b. are being walked
 c. walked d. are walked

3 Check your understanding

24. "My sister is helping me with a maths problem." This means
 a. my sister is helped with a maths problem.
 b. I am helping my sister with a maths problem.
 c. I am being helped with a maths problem by my sister.
 d. a maths problem is being helped by my sister.
25. Rodayna can't reply to your email.
 a. Her laptop is offline. b. She is busy welcoming some guests.
 c. She has taken a shower. d. Both 'a' and 'b' are possible.
26. "Ahmed has arranged to fly to London next Friday." This means
 a. Ahmed is flown to London next Friday.
 b. Ahmed is flying to London next Friday.
 c. Ahmed flies to London next Friday.
 d. Ahmed is being flying to London next Friday.
27. "Aya hasn't finished the cooking yet." This means
 a. Aya is still doing the cooking. b. Aya hasn't done the cooking yet.
 c. Aya is still being done the cooking. d. Aya is not doing the cooking.
28. "What annoys me is his repeated complaints." This means
 a. He is never complaining. b. He is always complaining.
 c. He is constantly complaining. d. b & c

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

take revenge for	ينتقم من	enemy (n)	عدو
kneel - knelt (v)	يركع	prove - proved - proven (v)	يثبت - يبرهن
betray (ed) (v)	يخون	take away (phr. v)	يبعد
treason (n)	خيانة	send a message	يرسل رسالة
authority (n)	سلطة	madness (n)	جنون
deceive (d) (v)	يخدع	cure (d) (v - n)	يعالج - علاج
get rid of	يتخلص من	traitor (n)	خائن

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "To get rid of" means to ".....".
a. cure b. kill c. deceive d. prove
- The police have the to stop drivers in the street.
a. enemy b. carriage c. authority d. madness
- Mum was on the floor, so she could play with my baby brother.
a. kneeling b. curing c. deceiving d. proving
- In the past, people did not understand that is an illness.
a. enemy b. carriage c. authority d. madness
- In the story, the King's best friend was really a / an who wanted to kill him.
a. carriage b. traitor c. authority d. author
- Scientists have the information to that global warming is a problem.
a. cure b. kill c. deceive d. prove

7. Doctors hope that they will many more illnesses in the future.
a. cure b. kill c. deceive d. prove
8. In the past, horses pulled a / an where people could sit.
a. enemy b. carriage c. authority d. madness
9. The opposite of a good friend is a / an
a. enemy b. carriage c. authority d. madness
10. I thought he was telling me the truth, but he me.
a. cured b. knelt c. deceived d. proved

Part II

Grammatical Hints

verb + object + (inf. + ing)

يمكن استخدام الأفعال التالية ويليها المفعول ثم (inf. + ing) :

- keep - hate - dislike - not like - imagine يتخيل - involve يتضمن -
mind يمانع - prevent يمنع - remember - risk يخاطر ب - come across يصادف -
stop + object مفعول + (inf. + ing) ...

- I don't mind you joining the school trip.
- She can't imagine him not being her father.
- Be cool or you can risk the boy losing interest in his study.
- I stopped Leen damaging her toys.

I wish / I'd rather / It is time + past simple

١. لاحظ :

أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمنى في المضارع :

- I wish my father earned more money.

(والذي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمني العكس !)

ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (الشيء في المضارع) :

- I'd rather you didn't ask me to lend you money.

(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)

ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It is time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :

- It is time you returned the book to the library. (المتحدث هنا يلوم أو يُذكّر)

٢. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم

بعدهم الماضي التام (had + P.P.) وليس الماضي البسيط :

- I'd rather you had finished the report last Friday.
- I wish I hadn't wasted all my money last summer holiday.

too + adj. + to + inf. ... جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع

- تُعطي هذه الصيغة معني النفي: جملة منفية + that + adj. + to + inf. = too + adj. + to + inf.
- I'm **too tired to write** more now.
= I'm **so tired that I can't write** more now.
 - He is **too short to play** basketball.
= He is **so short that he isn't able to** play basketball.

teach - learn - know - show - tell ... + how to + inf.

يمكن استخدام أدوات الاستفهام قبل (to) بعد بعض الأفعال السابقة:

- I don't **know what to do** in this difficult situation.
- Mrs Noha **showed me how to draw** a nice flower.
- The shop owner **told me where to** find the bus stop.

Collective nouns إسمُ الجَمْع

اسم الجمع هو اسم مفرد يدل على مجموعة أفراد أو أشياء، ومن أمثلة هذه الأسماء ما يلي:

- team - group - family class - flock طاقم - هيئة عاملين - قطع
- crew - staff - the government - gang عصابة... زوج
- couple

هذه الأسماء في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد (عندما نشير إلى معناها كوحدة واحدة) أو جمع (عندما نشير إلى الأعضاء المكونة لها) حسب المعنى المقصود:

- My family **are** happy. - My family **is** the most important thing in my life.
- تأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا استخدمنا معها (who / whom) أو أي ضمير جمع، أما إذا استخدمنا معها (which) أو ضمير غير عاقل فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد
- The gang **who** robbed the bank **were** arrested yesterday.
- The gang **which** robbed the bank **was** arrested yesterday.

on / of ... own

- **On (your-my-her....) own** = by + ضمير منعكس = alone. (دون مساعده) بنفسه/بمفرده
- Mariam did her homework **on her own (alone/by herself)**.
- **Of (my/his/her/your) own** تدل على الملكية (ملكه)
- I have a flat **of my own**.

start / begin + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافاً له (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:
- He **began working / to work** for this company last year.
- لكن بعد (starting / beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط:
- I **was starting to do** my homework when the phone rang.

find it + adj. + to + inf. ... يجد من ... أن

- I **found it difficult** to move the cupboard alone.
- Sama **finds it interesting** to watch programmes about nature.

else أيضًا / آخر

• Q.W. أيضًا + أداة استفهام ?

- Who else did you meet?

- Where else have you been?

• someone / anyone / something / anything + else آخر

- Someone else is knocking on the door.

- I don't want anything else. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (else) بعد (or) للتحذير

- Do your homework or else you will be punished.

Exercise

On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The team who won the Champions' League being honoured.
a. is b. has c. are d. have
2. The team which won the Champions' League being honoured.
a. is b. has c. are d. have
3. Where did you go during your last holiday ?
a. also b. else c. too d. neither
4. I came across a group of boys in the canal.
a. swims b. swam c. to swim d. swimming
5. Rokaya finds it to understand maths.
a. hard b. hardly c. hardy d. hardness
6. I did all these jobs my own. That's why I am dead tired.
a. from b. off c. of d. on
7. My brother makes a lot of noise, so I want to have a room my own.
a. from b. off c. of d. on
8. There was too much noise and he was starting nervous.
a. getting b. to get c. a & b d. to getting
9. Leen took the medicine and soon she started better.
a. getting b. to get c. a & b d. to getting
10. Mr Mohammed taught me English.
a. to speak b. how to speak c. what to speak d. a & b
11. He is very fat. He finds it to run.
a. too difficult b. difficult enough
c. so difficult d. a & c
12. I wish I good company صُحبة.
a. have b. has c. had d. had had
13. I wish I good company when I was young.
a. have b. has c. had d. had had

Part III

Language Skills

1 كتابة عن موقف أو ذكرى في مفكرة اليوميات Writing a diary Entry

Write a diary entry of about (180) words about a day in your life while you're living in a new place or abroad.

1st January 2021

I've been in Paris for two years now. I think it's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been as easy as I have expected.

When I first arrived in Paris, I found it very difficult to understand people. However, I'm getting quite better at understanding people's accents now. I really enjoy listening to people from Paris. I usually try to have conversations with them. I have become very good at speaking French. You won't believe what happened to me two days ago! I was talking to a man on the underground and he asked me if I was from Paris!

Isn't that amazing? The people here are very nice. Everyone I've met has usually been very helpful to me. Consequently, I feel really at home here.

The host family that I'm staying with are really generous. They really look after me as if I am a member of their family! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to French food! In fact, I liked the French kitchen a lot.

I can't deny that I'm really happy that I decided to study medicine here in Paris. Sometimes I miss my family and friends, but I keep in touch with them by video calls, online chatting and emails. I've become more independent since I've arrived here. I have to do a lot of things on my own. I have to make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do so many things, but I'm really enjoying my life here.

Until tomorrow!

Rokaya

2 الترجمة Translation

① Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to study abroad since I want to go to beneficial places. I want my mind to grow. I want to live where things change on a large scale.

- أ. أريد أن أدرس في الخارج لأنني أريد الذهاب إلى أماكن مفيدة. أريد عقلي أن ينمو. أريد أن أعيش حيث تتغير الأشياء على ميزان واسع.
- ب. أريد أن أدرس في الخارج لأنني أريد الذهاب إلى أماكن عديدة. أريد عقلي أن ينمو. أريد أن أعيش حيث تتغير الأشياء على نطاق واسع.
- ج. أريد أن أدرس في الخارج لأنني لا أريد الذهاب إلى أماكن عديدة. أريد عقلي أن ينمو. أريد أن أعيش حيث تتغير الأشياء على نطاق واسع.

د. أريد أن أدرس في الخارج لأنني أريد الذهاب إلى أماكن مفيدة. أريد عقلي أن ينمو. أريد أن أعيش حيث تتغير الأشياء على نطاق واسع.

2. Simple exchanges can break walls down between us, for when people come together and speak to one another and share a common experience, then their common humanity is revealed.

أ. يمكن للتبادلات البسيطة أن تكسر الحواجز بيننا ، لأنه عندما يجتمع الناس ويتحدثون مع بعضهم البعض ويتشاركون تجربة مشتركة ، عندها تظهر إنسانيتهم المشتركة.

ب. يمكن للتبادلات البسيطة أن تثبت الحواجز بيننا ، لأنه عندما يجتمع الناس ويتحدثون مع بعضهم البعض ويتشاركون تجربة مشتركة ، عندها تظهر إنسانيتهم المشتركة.

ج. يمكن للتبادلات البسيطة أن تبني الحواجز بيننا ، لأنه عندما يجتمع الناس ويتحدثون مع بعضهم البعض ويتشاركون تجربة مشتركة ، عندها تظهر إنسانيتهم المشتركة.

د. يمكن للتبادلات البسيطة أن تكسر الحواجز بيننا ، لأنه عندما يجمع الناس ويتحدثون مع بعضهم البعض ويتشاركون تجربة صغيرة ، عندها تظهر إنسانيتهم العامة.

② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

الكثير من الطلاب لديهم الطموح للسفر واستكمال دراستهم بالخارج إما سعياً وراء بيئة تعليمية قد تكون أفضل أو للبحث عن واقع جديد به تحديات ودوافع مختلفة .

- a. Many students have the ambition to travel and complete their studies aboard, either in pursuit of an educational environment that may be better or in search of a new reality with different challenges and motives.
- b. Many students have the ambition to travel and complete their studies abroad, neither in pursuit of an educational environment that may be better or in research of a new reality with different challenges and motives.
- c. Many students have the ambition to travel and complete their studies abroad, either in pursuit of an educational environment that may be better or in search of a new reality with different challenges and motives.
- d. Many students have the ambitious to travel and complete their studies abroad, either in pursuit of an educational environment that may be better or in search of a new reality with different challenges and motives.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

• هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

تنويه

determination

• determine (v)

- The police have determined the cause of the fire.
- Your marks in the final exams determine the faculty الكلية you will join.

يحدد - يبت في

• determination (n)

- Rodayna has great determination to reach her goal.

إصرار - عزيمة

• determination (n)

- The determination of the new plan needs a lot of efforts.

تحديد - اتخاذ القرار بشأن

• **determined (adj)**

ذو عزيمة - يتحلى بالإصرار

- My uncle is a very determined man.

• **be determined + to + inf.**

مُصمَّم علي - عازم علي

- I was determined to look for a better job.

encouragement

• **encourage + (inf. + ing)** يشجع - يحض علي

بصرف ... عن

- The government encourages starting private businesses.

• **encourage someone to + inf.**

يشجع شخص علي القيام بشيء

- His mother encourages him to do a sport to keep fit.

• **discourage someone from + (inf. + ing)**

يُثني ... عن / يَصرف ... عن

- I discourage Rodayna from making friends with bad girls.

• **encouraging** مُحفِّز / مُشجِّع

مُثبِّط - محيط

- The words of my boss were really encouraging.

• **encouragement** تحفيز

إحباط

- She is hard-working by nature. She doesn't need encouragement.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- give ... encouragement

يشجع ...

- get encouragement

ينال التشجيع

- positive encouragement

تشجيع ايجابي

- active encouragement

تشجيع بالقول والفعل

- words of encouragement

كلمات تحفيزية

explore

• **explore (v)**

يفكر بإمعان / يتدبر / يتحرى بدقة

- I have to explore other solutions to the problem.

• **explore (v)**

يستكشف (مكان)

- Some areas in this forest haven't been explored yet.

• **explore (v)**

يتحسس

- The blind man explored the door to find the key hole.

• **explorer (n)**

مُستَكشِف لـ (مكان / فكرة)

- Some explorers went into the forest in the early morning.

• **exploration (n)**

استكشاف (مكان)

- The exploration of space costs too much money.

• **unexplored (adj)**

مكان غير مُستَكشَف / فكرة لم يتم مناقشتها

- Some planets are still unexplored.

independent

- **depend (on / upon) = rely (v)** يعتمد علي
- Egypt depends on tourism as a source of hard currency. العملة الصعبة مصدر
- **dependants / dependents (n)** عيال / معولين (عالة علي غيرهم)
- Salma is a widow أرملة with several dependants / dependents.
- **independent** مستقل - غير مُحْتَل
- Egypt became independent in 1956.
- **independent (of)** معتمد علي نفسه - مستقل في حياته وقراراته
- You shouldn't be dependent on your parents all your life.
- He is now an adult بالغ who is independent of his parents.
- **independent (of) ≠ dependent** مُعتمد علي غيره - متواكل ≠ مستقل بذاته
- He has an independent supermarket.
- **independence (from) ≠ dependence (on)** اعتماد (علي) ≠ استقلال (عن)
- Egypt gained independence from England in 1956.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- full / complete independence استقلال تام
- economic / political independence استقلال اقتصادي / سياسي
- get / gain / achieve / win independence يحصل علي الاستقلال
- grant independence يمنح الاستقلال
- Independence Day عيد الاستقلال
- struggle for independence يناضل من اجل الاستقلال

struggle

- **struggle to + inf. (v)** يناضل / يكافح لكي
- My parents struggled to educate us.
- **struggle with + n / (inf. + ing) (v)** يناضل / يكافح في - يتصارع مع
- I am struggling with physics which is very difficult to me.
- While he was struggling with the bullies, البلطجية he was badly wounded. جُرح
- **struggle for + n / (inf. + ing) (v)** يناضل / يكافح من أجل - يتشاجر علي
- We struggle for better living conditions.
- The two brothers were struggling for the new bike.
- **struggle (for / with / against) (n)** نضال / كفاح (من أجل / مع / ضد)
- We are proud of Egypt's history of struggle for independence.
- **be a struggle (for somebody)** يمثل صعوبة (بالنسبة لشخص ما)
- Essay writing is a struggle for some students.

Important Expressions تعبيرات هامة

- **all in all** في المُجْمَل - بصفة عامة
- All in all, the new villa was a bargain صفقة.

- **dear diary** (ذكري عزيزة (تُكتب في بداية صفحة في المفكرة للدلالة على ذكري سعيدة)
 - Dear diary: Today is one of the best days in my life. My son Ahmed has graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.
 - 2003, which was the date of my wedding party, is a **dear diary** to me.
- **get used to + n / (inf. + ing)** يعتاد على
 - Rodayna got used to the noise of the city.
 - Rania got used to living in Cairo.
- **host family** عائلة مضييفة (اسرة تستضيف طالباً أجنبياً)
 - While I was studying in France, my **host family** were very helpful.
- **pick ... up** يُقبل / يوصل (شخص في سيارة)
 - I will **pick her up** from the airport.
- **Isn't that amazing?** أليس ذلك رائعاً (تُقال للتعبير عن الإعجاب الشديد)
 - I have got a very good job. **Isn't that amazing?**
- **You won't believe what happened to me!** لن تُصدق ما حدث لي! (تُقال في بداية سرد موقف مثير)
 - **Until tomorrow!** إلى الغدا! (تُقال في نهاية لقاء أو حديث أو رسالة)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He is worried about travelling
a. alone b. lonely c. loneliness d. a & b
2. She has just had her first baby. It is the first time for her to the feelings of real motherhood.
a. encourage b. determine c. experience d. exercise
3. The fingerprints will who the criminals are.
a. determine b. come across c. provide d. confuse
4. To explore is synonymous with to
a. travel b. invent c. discover d. look at
5. I bought this to help me carry goods through the narrow streets to the market.
a. train b. pick-up c. ship d. aircraft

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
3.	a	(لسمعة/ يحدد) هنا يعني (determine) الفعل -
2.	c	(تجربة/ يشعر به) هنا فعل يعني (experience) كلمة -
1.	a	المطلوب ظرف، كلمة (lonely) صفة وليست ظرف -

5.	b	(أشرف) (pick-up) هنا اسم يعني -
4.	d	(النيل الاصطلاحي) (look at) هنا يعني (يشترك) -

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Can you help me with these boxes or busy?
a. are you being b. are you c. you are d. b & c
- The company its offices to a bigger building next month.
a. move b. moves c. is moving d. are moving
- Mr Ashraf us greatly. We all enjoy his lessons.
a. is always impressing b. always impresses
c. is always impressed d. always is impressed
- The current economic crises steadily.
a. are stabilising b. is stabilising c. stabilises d. stabilise
- You me a favour معروف.
a. owe b. owes c. are owing d. owing
- Oh, my God! My daughter her dolls on my bed. That's annoying.
a. always put b. is put c. always is putting d. is always putting
- Naguib Mahfouz for his great novels.
a. is still remembering b. is still remembered
c. is still being remembered d. was still remembered

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	هذا (be) فعل (are you being) لا يمكن استخدامه (you are/are you) صيغتين بشكل أو آخر وإن كانت (you) لا يمكن استخدامها (are) هي الأصح في اللغة الرسمية
2.	c	يمكن استخدامها (are) هي الأصح في اللغة الرسمية
3.	b	يمكن استخدامها (its) صيغة الجمع لوجود جمع الجمع
4.	a	يمكن استخدامها (crises) جمع
5.	a	يمكن استخدامها (owe) لا يمكن استخدامها
6.	d	يمكن استخدامها (always) (d) هي (always) الوحيدة الصالحة لقرينة من بين الأختيارات
7.	b	يمكن استخدامها (remember) لا يمكن استخدامها

Test on Unit 7

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You need to do
a. differences b. your best c. the experience d. fun
2. We are confident about her success." Which of the following is the best synonym for 'confident' ?
a. hopeful b. pessimistic c. uncertain d. doubtful
3. I had to fight against so many difficulties last year., it was one of the unhappy years of my life.
a. All in all b. Until tomorrow c. Get used to d. Dear diary
4. She got married and now she is of her parents.
a. dependence b. dependent c. independence d. independent
5. I want very much to the area behind that mountain.
a. distract b. explore c. encourage d. pick up
6. She to bring up her children after her husband's death.
a. struggled b. included c. got used d. depended
7. We can't play tennis today because it
a. rains b. rained c. is raining d. rain
8. At the moment, we are doing a history project at school. It very interesting.
a. was b. was being c. is d. is being
9. It is often hot and sunny in Egypt, so we air conditioning in most of our buildings.
a. are needed b. are needing c. need d. needed
10. We a meeting at work this morning. Everyone will have to be there in time.
a. are having b. are had c. were had d. had
11. My grandmother in Alexandria at the moment. She will move to Cairo next month.
a. lived b. was living c. live d. is living
12. I Chinese food.
a. am preferring b. prefer c. was preferring d. was preferred
13. My sister working with children. At the moment, she is training to be a primary school teacher.
a. enjoy b. is enjoyed c. enjoys d. is enjoying
14. I bought my new camera last week. I some photos now.
a. take b. am taking c. took d. taken
15. While I at work, I don't answer private calls.
a. am b. am being c. was d. was being

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(المزج ٢٠٢٢)

An Egyptian **teenager** has discovered an inexpensive way to turn plastic rubbish into fuel and it could be worth millions of dollars a year. Azza Faiad's ideas attracted the attention of the Egyptian Petroleum Research Institute. The institute gave her access to a lab and its researchers in order to help refine the trash to fuel formula.

Faiad discovered a cheap and plentiful catalyst **عامل محفز** called aluminosilicate that reduces the cost of converting plastic waste into gases like methane and propane, which can be turned into ethanol. Scientists called this "biofuel" because the organic chemicals from plastic polymers that she extracts, are the same chemicals extracted from plants to create ethanol biofuel.

The process releases other chemicals that can also be recycled and sold. Egypt produces a million tons of plastic **garbage** every year. It's estimated that Faiad's process could convert that much trash into fuel worth \$78 million every year. The European Union Contest for Young Scientists has already honoured Faiad with a prize for her work and she is now working on a patent **براءة اختراع** for her trash to fuel project.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Which of the following summarises the second paragraph ?
 a. A great new discovery b. An Egyptian teenager
 c. Methane is a cheap gas d. How to produce propane
- The underlined word "**teenager**" refers to
 a. Faiad's sister b. Azza Faiad's friend
 c. The writer d. Azza Faiad
- Azza Faiad is a
 a. doctor b. teacher c. student d. mechanic
- Faiad helped to solve problem.
 a. overpopulation b. pollution c. housing d. education
- The suitable title for the passage is
 a. Rubbish b. Recycling c. Teenagers d. Fuel
- Azza's idea is very useful as it is
 a. hard to do b. cheap and green
 c. easy but expensive d. fast to do
- What will happen if more people throw more rubbish ?
 a. Pollution will increase. b. The environment will be clean.
 c. Nothing will happen. d. The snow will melt.
- The word "**garbage**" can be replaced by
 a. metal b. plastic c. rubbish d. process

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Travel early and travel often. Understand cultures other than your own. As your understanding of other cultures increases, your understanding of yourself and your own culture will increase.

- أ. سافر مبكرًا وسافر كثيرًا. افهم الثقافات الأخرى غير ثقافتك. مع زيادة فهمك للثقافات الأخرى ، سيزداد فهمك لنفسك وثقافتهم.
- ب. سافر مبكرًا وسافر كثيرًا. افهم الثقافات الأخرى غير ثقافتك. مع زيادة فهمك للثقافات الأخرى ، سيزداد فهمك لنفسك وثقافتك.
- ج. سافر مبكرًا وسافر قليلًا. افهم الثقافات الأخرى غير ثقافتك. مع زيادة فهمك للثقافات الأخرى ، سيزداد فهمك لنفسك وثقافتك.
- د. سافر مبكرًا وسافر كثيرًا. افهم الثقافات الأخرى وحاول تغيير ثقافتك. مع زيادة فهمك للثقافات الأخرى ، سيزداد فهمك لنفسك وثقافتك.

4 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

هل تعتقد أنه من السهل السفر للدراسة بالخارج والإقامة مع إحدى الأسر المضيفة؟ أعتقد الدراسة بالخارج أمر مفيد للغاية. لكن الإقامة مع أسرة مضييفة قد لا يكون سهلًا بالنسبة للكثيرين.

- a. Did you think it is easy to travel to study abroad and live with a host family? I think studying abroad is very useful. However, living with a host family may not be easy for many.
- b. Are you thinking it is easy to travel to study abroad and live with a host family? I think studying abroad is very useful. But living with a host family may not be easy for many.
- c. Do you think it is easy to travel to study abroad and live with a host family? I think studying abroad is very useful. Because living with a host family may not be easy for many.
- d. Do you think it is easy to travel to study abroad and live with a host family? I think studying abroad is very useful. However, living with a host family may not be easy for many.

5 Write an essay of about 180 words on :

"Studying abroad"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة. **تنويه**

UNIT 8

High-tech transport

SB pages 16 : 25

WB pages 8 : 13

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

🕒 Reading :

A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network

📝 Writing :

A speech for or against an argument;
An email to the local government about public transport

👂 Listening :

A talk show debate about the future of transport

🗣️ Speaking :

A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport;
Asking and answering questions about a schedule

🗣️ Language :

Future perfect

🧠 Life skills :

- Critical thinking ; Problem solving ;
Respect for diversity



• بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
• Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
• التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

الإتقان
الوحدة

Part

I

Vocabulary

تنويه

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

connect(ed) (v)	يربط - يُوَصِّل	passenger(n)	مسافر - راكب
expansion(n)	تَوْسُّع - تَمَدُّد	public transport	المواصلات العامة
facilities(n)	تسهيلات - امتيازات	public(adj)	عام - شعبي
	- مرافق - مواهب	system(n)	نظام - شبكة
give up on (phr. v)	يفقد الأمل في - يتوقف عن	transport(ed) (n-v)	(وسائل) النقل / المواصلات - ينقل
go down (phr. v)	ينخفض - يقل - يهبط	underground (adj - adv)	جوفي - تحت الأرض
high-tech(adj)	تقنية عالية	the Underground(n)	مترو الأنفاق
network(n)	شبكة		

تنويه

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

add(ed) (v)	يضيف	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
affordable(adj)	مُتاح - في المتناول	interrupt(ed) (v)	يقاطع
authority(n)	السلطة	introduce(d) (v)	يُقدِّم - يطرح/يعرض
available(adj)	متاح - في المتناول	involve(d) (v)	يتضمن - يشمل
central(adj)	مركزي	length(n)	طول (مدة/مسافة)
check(ed) in (phr. v)	يُسجل وصول - يراجع أوراق السفر	line(n)	خط
coast(n)	ساحل	monorail(n)	قطار أحادي القضبان
complete(adj)	كامل - يُكْمَل	New Administrative City	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
construction(n)	إنشاء - تركيب	operate(d)(v)	يُشغِّل
controls(n)	مفاتيح/أدوات تَحْكُم	operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل
create(d) (v)	يُنشئ - يُوجد - يخلق	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
debate(n)	نقاش - مُناظرة	pollution(n)	التلوث
disagreement(n)	خلاف - نزاع	practise(d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب
discussion(n)	مناقشة		

doubt(n)	شك	private(adj)	خاص - شخصي
driverless(adj)	دون سائق	production(n)	إنتاج
emphasise(d) (v)	يؤكد على	railway(n)	سكك حديدية
equipment(n)	معدات - أدوات	replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
first-aid(n)	إسعافات أولية	schedule(n)	برنامج - جدول ترتيبات
forms(n)	أنواع - أشكال	security(n)	أمن
gas(n)	غاز	series(n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
gate(n)	بوابة	size(n)	حجم
guess(ed) (v)	يُخمن	suburb(n)	ضاحية - حارة
importance(n)	أهمية	talk show (n)	برنامج حوار
improve(d) (v)	يتحسن - يُحسن	total (adj - n)	كلي / نهائي - مجموع
improved(adj)	مُحسّن - مُطوّر	tunnel(n)	نفق
including(preposition)	بما في ذلك	understanding(n)	تفهم - تحصيل
increase(d) (v - n)	يزداد / يزيد - زيادة - ارتفاع		
precise(adj)	دقيق - مُحكم		

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

تنويه

3

تعريفات Definitions

Memorise	Understand
expansion(n) توسّع - تمّدد - تضخّم	an increase in the size or length of something
facilities(n) تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق	places, buildings or equipment that are used for an activity
high-tech(adj) ذو تقنية عالية	describing something that uses a lot of new technology
network(n) شبكة	any system that has a lot of connected parts
transport (n) وسائل النقل / المواصلات	buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1

Key vocabulary

1. Egypt is building a modern of roads and flyovers كبارى علوية.
- a. alternative b. argument c. system d. network

2. Huge ships passengers and goods between Egypt and Saudi Arabia.
a. connect b. respond c. transport d. involve
3. Not all people like it when prices Producers hate it.
a. give up b. give up on c. go up d. go down
4. The runs on electricity.
a. facility b. Underground c. construction d. schedule
5. Using forms of public will help solve the traffic problem.
a. translation b. transplant c. health care d. transport
6. The 6th October-Aswan railway will Cairo to Upper Egypt.
a. connect b. respond c. transport d. involve
7. The of cities mustn't be at the expense of حساب علي farmland.
a. issue b. transport c. expansion d. passenger
8. Smartphones have the conference-call
a. facility b. underground c. construction d. monorail
9. We have installed a/an security system.
a. pollution-free b. environmentally friendly
c. public transport d. high-tech
10. Windows is a very common operating
a. alternative b. argument c. system d. network
11. The Underground is a form of transport.
a. public b. private c. current d. grateful
12. aren't allowed to smoke on means of transport.
a. Issues b. Transports c. Expansions d. Passengers
13. Although he is over seventy years old, he hasn't doing sport.
a. given up b. given up on c. a & b d. gone down

2 Important vocabulary

14. I have a car. I don't have to take the bus.
a. precise b. central c. private d. driverless
15. Mr Mohammed an important point for discussion.
a. interrupted b. tunnelled c. operated d. introduced
16. A is usually quieter than the city centre.
a. suburb b. pollution c. debate d. market
17. I have a busy today.
a. tunnel b. schedule c. research d. form
18. I want my mother to my father to let me join the school trip.
a. interrupt b. persuade c. consider d. create

19. I paid for everything I had ordered, the delivery fees.
 a. including b. understanding c. precise d. underground
20. Try to enjoy what is in your hands.
 a. precise b. total c. available d. driverless
21. The user guide tells you how to a device.
 a. interrupt b. introduce c. emphasise d. operate
22. "Naturally, people like any increase in their income." In this utterance, the word 'increase' is a/an
 a. noun b. pronoun c. verb d. adverb
23. Smartphones are now available at prices.
 a. facilitated b. affordable c. current d. grateful
24. Building the new Administrative Capital the building of two monorail lines.
 a. connects b. responds c. transports d. involves
25. I doubt this information. I think it is not
 a. precise b. private c. available d. driverless
26. The research the importance of planting trees.
 a. interrupts b. creates c. emphasises d. operates
27. The committee اللجنة are the possible solutions to the problem.
 a. cycling b. debating c. creating d. leading to
28. While a traditional train moves on two rails, a /an movers on one rail.
 a. railway b. Underground c. construction d. monorail
29. When someone is talking, it is impolite to them.
 a. interrupt b. introduce c. emphasise d. operate

3 Definitions

30. A place, building or equipment that is used for an activity is known as a/an
 a. argument b. facility c. alternative d. network
31. An increase in the size or length of something is called a/an
 a. transport b. argument c. equipment d. expansion
32. The noun '.....' refers to buses, trains or trams that anyone can use to travel around.
 a. transport b. argument c. equipment d. expansion
33. Any system that has a lot of connected parts is called a/an
 a. argument b. facility c. alternative d. network
34. means using a lot of new technology.
 a. Friendly b. High-tech c. Significant d. Convenient

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه

ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدرباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

build	a metro line	يُنشئ خط مترو	make	notes	يدون ملاحظات عن
cause	pollution	يسبب التلوث	show	disagreement	يُبدى رفضاً
create	pollution	يسبب التلوث	show	doubt	يُبدى الشك
create	a connection	يوجد صلة	take	a test	يُمتحن - يخضع لامتحان
do	a cooking course	يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي	take	place	يحدث
have	a precise schedule	لديه جدول عمل واضح			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
connect	يربط - يُوصل
expansion	توسّع - تَمَدّد
facility	موهبة / ملكة
public	عام - قومي
public	مرموق - بارز
	join, attach, associate, link
	growth
	talent
	national
	prominent, well-known

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
connect	يربط - يُوصل	disconnect, dissociate	يفصل - يقطع الاتصال
expansion	توسّع - تَمَدّد	contraction	انكماش / تقلص
public	عام - قومي	private	خاص - شخصي
public	مرموق - بارز	obscure, unknown	مغمور - غير معروف
public	على الملأ	secret	سري

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

connect		
connect(v)	يربط - يُوصل	- Try to connect causes and results.
connection(n)	رابط - اتصال	- Try to make a connection between causes and results.

connected (adj)	مُتَّصِل - ذي صلة	- Results are connected to causes.
expansion		
expand (v)	يُمدَّد - يتمدد	- Metals expand when they are heated.
expansion (n)	توسُّع - تَمَدُّد	- Very high temperatures lead to the expansion of metals.
expandable (adj)	قابل للتوسعة أو التَمَدُّد	- Metals are expandable when they are heated.
facility		
facilitate (v)	يُسَهِّل - يُيسِّر	- The role of the teacher is to facilitate complicated points.
facilitation (n)	التسهيل - التوضيح	- The role of the teacher is the facilitation of complicated points.
facilitator (n)	مُيسِّر	- A teacher is more of a facilitator .
facilities (n)	تسهيلات - امتيازات - مرافق - مواهب	- Luxor has great tourist facilities .
public		
public (n)	الجمهور - العامة	- Most of the public are against crime.
public (adj)	عام - شعبي	- Trains are public transport.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

along the coast	على امتداد الساحل	increase in	زيادة في
around the world	حول العالم	instead of	بدلاً من
bad for	ضار بـ	make it easier for	يجعل من الأسهل بالنسبة لـ
bring the total number to	يصل بالرقم النهائي إلى	metro network	شبكة المترو
by the end of	قبل نهاية	monorail line	خط سكة حديد أحادي القضبان
Cairo Metro Authority	هيئة مترو القاهرة	over the next ten years	على مدار السنوات العشر القادمة
close to	قريب من	talk show	برنامج حوار
expansion work	أعمل التوسُّع أو المَدَّ	ten times the pollution of	عشر أضعاف التلوث الناتج عن
for or against	مع أو ضد	total number	الرقم النهائي - المجموع
forms of transport	أنواع وسائل المواصلات	underground network	شبكة مترو الأنفاق
Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى		
public transport network / system	شبكة المواصلات العامة		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	plan to / for	يخطط (لـ / من أجل)
expect to	يتوقع أن	stop ... from	يمنع ... من أن
get to	يصل إلى	travel around	يتنقل في أنحاء
give up	يُقلع عن - يستسلم	work for	يعمل لحساب
go down	يقل / ينخفض - يهبط		

Exercise On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When something is easy to get, obtain or buy, we say it is
a. understanding b. available c. unavailable d. hidden
- Man's activities much pollution.
a. create b. do c. cause d. a & c
- His expression shows
a. research b. schedule c. place d. doubt
- "The new high-tech monorail will connect the New Administrative City to Greater Cairo." Here, we can replace the verb 'connect' with
a. join b. link c. a & b d. disconnect
- When we say that someone is a public figure, we mean that they are not
a. prominent b. obscure c. famous d. well-known
- He hadn't made up his mind. He doubt.
a. built b. showed c. took d. got
- Youssef is a cooking course because he wants to start his own restaurant.
a. emphasising b. giving c. doing d. making
- There are plans for a new metro line.
a. building b. showing c. taking d. getting
- 'Expansion' is to as 'connect' is to 'associate'.
a. contraction b. growth c. reaction d. significance
- "Rodayna has a wonderful facility for Maths." The word 'facility' in this sentence is the synonym of
a. easy b. difficulty c. talent d. a & c
- The company plans a new branch in Aswan.
a. open b. to open c. opening d. to opening
- The Underground is the best of transport in busy cities.
a. formula b. forum c. from d. form
- The streets were crowded, so I got the office late.
a. to b. up c. off d. from

14. The internet needs to be fixed.
 a. connection b. connects c. transport d. transports
15. This exercise the arm muscles.
 a. expands b. expansion c. facilitate d. facilities
16. This exercise leads to the of the arm muscles.
 a. expands b. expansion c. facilitate d. facilities

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading texts

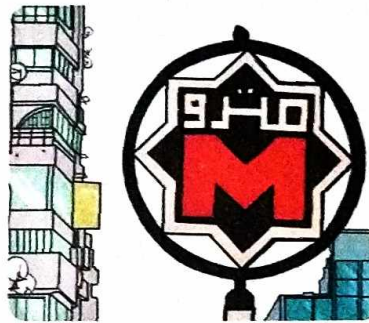
Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

(SB page 17)

We hope that all our passengers⁽¹⁾ will enjoy using our new Line⁽²⁾ 3. This expansion⁽³⁾ of the Cairo Metro adds⁽⁴⁾ seven kilometres and six new stations⁽⁵⁾ to our underground network.⁽⁶⁾ Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to⁽⁷⁾ work faster and more easily because it connects⁽⁸⁾ Heliopolis and the central⁽⁹⁾ station of Adly Mansour. We expect⁽¹⁰⁾ that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year. High-tech⁽¹¹⁾ systems⁽¹²⁾ were used to build this 21st Century public⁽¹³⁾ transport⁽¹⁴⁾ system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring⁽¹⁵⁾ the total⁽¹⁶⁾ number to six. We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024.

Line 4 will connect the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short periods⁽¹⁷⁾ of time.

Although we don't have a precise⁽¹⁸⁾ schedule⁽¹⁹⁾ for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مسافرين - ركاب
- (2) خط
- (3) توسع
- (4) يضيف
- (5) محطات
- (6) شبكة مترو الأنفاق
- (7) يصل إلى
- (8) يربط
- (9) مركزي
- (10) يتوقع
- (11) ذو تقنية عالية
- (12) أنظمة - شبكات
- (13) العامة
- (14) المواصلات
- (15) يصل
- (16) كُلي - نهائي
- (17) فترات
- (18) دقيق
- (19) جدول



Part IV

Language

The Future Perfect Tense الزمن المستقبلي التام

Form	Active	Passive
Affirmation الإثبات	Subj. + will + have + P.P. - He will have decorated the house by next August.	Obj. + will + have + been + P.P. - The house will have been decorated by next August.
Negation النفي	Subj. + won't + have + P.P. - He won't have decorated the house by six o'clock.	Obj. + won't + have been + P.P. - The house won't have been decorated by six o'clock.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Will + subj. + have + P.P. ? - Will he have decorated the house by next August?	Will + obj. + have been + P.P. ? - Will the house have been decorated by next August?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + will + subj. + have + P.P. ? - When will he have decorated the house?	Q.W. + will + obj. + have been + P.P. ? - When will the house have been decorated?

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بـ (by / before / this time / by the time) :

- My son Ahmed will have started school by next October.
- Before midnight tomorrow, Rokaya will have studied unit 16.
- This time next year, our company will have achieved great success.

٢ يمكن استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل بدون (by / before) بشرط استخدام :

مدة زمنية for + period of time

- In 2025, Mona will have lived in her house for ten years.
- Next Monday, I will have stayed in Aswan for a week.

١ يستخدم المستقبل التام أيضًا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام على المعنى :

- مستقبل + مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + after/as soon as/ once / when /the moment
- When you **leave** the office, I **will have sent** the emails.
(سيكون الإرسال قد تم قبل مغادرتك للمكتب)
 - When you **leave** the office, I **will send** the emails.
(بعد مغادرتك للمكتب، سأقوم بالإرسال)

مستقبل (تام غالبًا) + مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + Before / By the time

- By the time I **go** home, I'll **have visited** two friends.

ملحظات للمتفوقين Notes for advanced level

١ يمكن أن يُستخدم المستقبل التام وأزمنة المستقبل الأخرى مع تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحروف جر وظروف أخرى مثل:

- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week etc.)
- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time
- This time next Friday, I **will have moved** into my new flat.
(سأكون قد انتقلت بالفعل)
- This time next Friday, I **will be moving** into my new flat.
(سأكون مستمرا في نقل الأشياء)

٢ يمكن استخدام المستقبل البسيط في ظل وجود تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بـ (by) إذا كان الحدث غير تام :

- By the year 2023, we **will be able** to send text messages by the power of thought.
- By 2040, people **will use** renewable sources of energy.

٣ يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية لتؤدي نفس معنى المستقبل التام:

- expect to have + p.p. ... (مبني للمعلوم)
- We **expect to have built** Line 5 by the end of next year.
- ... am / is / are + **expected to have been** + p.p. ... (مبني للمجهول)
- Line 5 **is expected to have been built** by the end of next year.

General Exercise

On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة تصاعديًا حسب مستويات التفكير طبقًا لهرم بلوم

تنويه

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. midday, I will have returned home.

a. By

b. Before

c. a & b

d. This time

2. Omar will his parents by bedtime.
 - a. calls
 - b. have called
 - c. has called
 - d. have been called
3. Omar's parents will by him by bedtime.
 - a. call
 - b. have called
 - c. has called
 - d. have been called
4. By ten o'clock tonight, I your tablet. You will still have to leave it until two days later.
 - a. will service
 - b. won't have serviced
 - c. won't service
 - d. won't have been serviced
5. By ten o'clock tonight, your tablet You will still have to leave it until two days later.
 - a. will service
 - b. won't have serviced
 - c. won't service
 - d. won't have been serviced
6. By 21st May, I all my final exams.
 - a. take
 - b. will take
 - c. will have taken
 - d. will have been taken
7. On 21st May, I all my final exams.
 - a. take
 - b. will take
 - c. will have taken
 - d. will have been taken
8. When I leave Edfu next year, I there for twenty five years.
 - a. will have lived
 - b. will have been lived
 - c. will live
 - d. may live
9. When you arrive home, I the meal. You will find the table set for lunch.
 - a. am preparing
 - b. will have prepared
 - c. will prepare
 - d. will have been prepared
10. When you arrive home tomorrow, I the meal. I will wait for you to help me.
 - a. am preparing
 - b. will have prepared
 - c. will prepare
 - d. will have been prepared
11. In a year's time, I to my new house. I won't have to live in this narrow flat anymore.
 - a. will have moved
 - b. will have been moving
 - c. will have to move
 - d. am moved
12. By 2030, most Egyptians well-educated.
 - a. will be
 - b. will have been
 - c. are being
 - d. are

• ذكّر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

تنويه



Part I

Vocabulary

تتويه

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

alternative (n - adj)	بدیل - مختلف	issue(n)	قضية
argument(n)	برهان / حجة - جدال	later (adj - adv)	متأخر عن - بعد
	- خلاف		ذلك / فيما بعد
consider(ed) (v)	يفكر في	on / in behalf of	بالنيابة عن - لمصلحة
convenient(adj)	ملائم - مناسب	respond(ed) (v)	يرد - يستجيب
current (adj - n)	جالي / جاري - التيار	satisfactory(adj)	مُرضي - كاف
earlier (adj)	أبكر من - قبل	significant(adj)	هام - مؤثر - ذو
earlier (adv)	قبل (ذلك) - من قبل		مغزى - ملحوظ
environmentally	صديق للبيئة		
friendly(adj)			

تتويه

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

appropriate(adj)	ملائم / مناسب	playground(n)	ملعب
conclusion(n)	خاتمة	point(n)	نقطة - فكرة - رأى
crowded(adj)	مزدحم - مكتظ	popularity(n)	شعبية - شهرة
cycle(d) (v)	يركب دراجة	possible(adj)	ممکن
decrease(d) (n - v)	انخفاض - ينخفض - يُخفّض	present(adj)	حالي / حاضر
disability(n)	إعاقة	project(n)	مشروع
effect(n)	أثر - تأثير	provide(d) (v)	يوفر
expect(ed) (v)	يتوقع	reason(n)	سبب
flying vehicle	مركبة طائرة	region(n)	منطقة - إقليم
further (adj-adv)	أكثر - أبعد	research(n)	بَحْث
governorate(n)	محافظة	solution(n)	حل
grateful(adj)	شاكر - ممتن	speech(n)	خُطبة - كلمة
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	stress(ed)(v)	ضغط - يضغط / يُؤثر
inexpensive(adj)	رخيص		علي
lead to - led (v)	يؤدي إلى	style(n)	نمط - أسلوب
level(n)	مستوى - نسبة	timetable(n)	جدول مواعيد
pause(d)(v-n)	يتوقف - يصمت - وقفة - لحظة صمت	vehicle(n)	مركبة
		wildlife(n)	الحيوانات البرية / الحياة البرية

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة – هام جدًا.

تنويه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
alternative (adj - n) بديل	(describing) something you do or use instead of something else
argument(n) بُرْهان / حُجَّة	the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong
environmentally friendly(adj) صديق للبيئة	when something is not bad for nature
significant(adj) هام - ملحوظ	having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Mr Ayman has not to my request yet.
a. connected b. responded c. transported d. involved
- Please, leave me alone. Let's discuss the matter
a. early b. earlier c. latter d. later
- The secretary told me that the manager had left an hour
a. cheaper b. earlier c. safer d. further
- I don't think tomorrow is a / an time for the meeting.
a. inexpensive b. driverless c. earlier d. convenient
- The invention of the computer has made a change in people's lives.
a. significant b. crowded c. late d. a & c
- Cycling instead of driving is healthier and much more
a. in behalf of b. alternative
c. environmentally friendly d. expensive
- Cycling instead of driving is healthier and much more the environment.
a. in behalf of b. environmentally friendly
c. alternative d. expensive

8. Mr Mohammed doesn't allow uncontrolled among students in his class.
a. alternatives b. arguments c. systems d. networks
9. Some herbs الأعشاب are good to chemical medicines.
a. alternatives b. arguments c. systems d. networks
10. Improving education is one of the important Egypt has decided to work on.
a. passengers b. transports c. expansions d. issues
11. He enjoys his job because it's profitable.
a. public b. affordable c. current d. grateful
12. Have you ever living in another city ?
a. interrupted b. persuaded c. considered d. created
13. We are working on a/an solution to the problem.
a. crowded b. imprecise c. grateful d. satisfactory

2 Important vocabulary

14. Luxor is a small which is popular with tourists.
a. governorate b. vehicle c. speech d. disability
15. She for a moment before she continued singing.
a. provided b. decreased c. paused d. stressed
16. This suit is for your job interview.
a. present b. appropriate c. crowded d. possible
17. Doing enough physical exercise to getting fit.
a. cycles b. debates c. creates d. leads
18. I to school. This way, I keep fit and, help the environment.
a. cycle b. debate c. create d. lead
19. I have no comments. That's all.
a. inexpensive b. safe c. along d. further
20. I am giving a at the meeting tomorrow.
a. governorate b. vehicle c. speech d. disability
21. When production, there are economic crises أزمات اقتصادية.
a. provides b. decreases c. stresses d. expects
22. I will help you if
a. present b. impossible c. possible d. crowded
23. I am really to my mother. She did her best to educate me.
a. public b. affordable c. current d. grateful
24. When there's too much of some goods, they become.....
a. inexpensive b. inconvenient c. local d. further

25. Sama was not at the meeting. I wonder why she didn't come.
 a. appropriate b. present c. crowded d. possible
26. Do you think flying will be popular in the future ?
 a. governorates b. vehicles c. speeches d. disabilities
27. Too much work without breaks me a lot.
 a. provides b. decreases c. stresses d. pauses
28. You need to be very careful when you drive in a/an street.
 a. present b. appropriate c. crowded d. possible

3 Definitions

29. means not bad for nature.
 a. Environmentally friendly b. High-tech
 c. Significant d. Convenient
30. A /An is the reasons that you give to say why something is right or wrong.
 a. argument b. facility c. alternative d. network
31. Something you do or use instead of something else is called a/an
 a. agreement b. facility c. alternative d. network
32. means useful, easy or quick to do; not causing problems.
 a. Eco friendly b. High-tech c. Significant d. Convenient
33. means having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future.
 a. Friendly b. High-tech c. Significant d. Convenient

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

discuss	this issue يناقش هذه المشكلة		... better يُحسن
do	some research يُجري بعض الأبحاث	make	a point يطرح وجهة نظر
emphasise	a point يؤكد وجهة نظر		the argument يقدم الحجة - يُبرهن
get	paid يحصل علي أجر	plan	a project يخطط لمشروع
give	a reason يُبرر	save	the planet يُنقذ الكوكب
have	an effect on له تأثير علي	write	a summary يكتب تلخيص

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
convenient	ملائم - مناسب	suitable, appropriate
earlier	قبل (ذلك)	before, before that time
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	eco-friendly
on/in behalf of	بالنيابة عن	as a representative of
respond	يستجيب	react
respond	يرد	answer, reply to, make a response
satisfactory	مُرْضي - كافٍ	adequate, acceptable, sufficient
significant	هام - ملحوظ - بارز	notable, remarkable, outstanding, important
significant	ذو مَغْزِي	meaningful, purposeful

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
convenient	ملائم - مناسب	inconvenient, awkward	غير ملائم
earlier	قبل (ذلك)	later	فيما بعد
respond	يرد	ask, inquire, wonder	يسأل - يستفسر - يتساءل
respond	يستجيب	ignore	يتجاهل
satisfactory	مُرْضي - كافٍ	unsatisfactory, inadequate, unacceptable	غير مرضي - غير ملائم
significant	هام - مؤثر - ملحوظ	insignificant	غير هام - تافه
significant	ذو مَغْزِي	meaningless	بلا معني

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مُشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

alternative		
alternative (n)	بديل	- Electricity is a clean alternative to oil.
alternative (adj)	بديل - مختلف	- Electricity is an alternative energy to oil.
alternatively (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	- We should limit the use of oil. We need to use electricity alternatively.
argument		
argue (v)	يتجادل - يدعم - يدافع عن	- I could hear Sama and Rodayna arguing. - He argues for human rights.

argument (n) جدال - خلاف - بُرْهان / حُجَّة	- Rodayna had a big argument with Sama. - He provided strong arguments to prove he is right.
argumentative (adj) مجادل - شديد الجدال	- He quickly becomes argumentative when I disagree with him.
convenient	
convenience (n) مُلاءمة - مُناسبة - مُواءمة - راحة	- The bank provides seats for the convenience of its customers.
convenient (adj) مُلائم - مناسب	- I think tomorrow is a convenient time for the meeting.
conveniently (adv) بشكل مُلائم	- The club is conveniently located outside the city.
environmentally	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all should protect the environment .
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an environmental issue.
environmentally (adv) من الناحية البيئية	- This is an environmentally harmful project.
friendly	
friend (n) صديق	- Mr Hossam is a good friend .
friendly (adj) ودود - وُدِّي	- Our team won its first friendly match.
friendliness (n) الود - المحبة	- They welcomed us with love and friendliness .
friendship (n) الصداقة	- Friendship is a valuable relationship.
respond	
respond (v) يرد - يستجيب	- She responded to my offer positively. - I hope my headache will respond to this medicine.
response (n) رَدّ - استجابة	- She gave a positive response to my offer.
satisfactory	
satisfy (v) يُرضي - يُلبّي احتياجات	- Only winning our matches satisfies our fans.
satisfaction (n) الرضا - الكفاية	- When I agreed, mum gave a smile of satisfaction .
satisfactory (adj) مُرْضي - كافٍ	- My teacher gave a satisfactory explanation to the lesson.

significant	
signify (v) يعني - يعطي مغزى	- What does this reply signify?
significance (n) أهمية - تأثير - مغزى	- Do you understand the significance of his comment?
significant (adj) هام - مؤثر - ذو مغزى - ملحوظ	- He gave a significant reply.
significantly (adv) بشكل ملحوظ	- The number of internet users has increased significantly in the last ten years.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

alternative to+ n / (inf. + ing) بديل لـ	local issues مشكلات محلية
at least على الأقل	people with disabilities ذوي الإعاقة
be based on قائم على	point of view وجهة نظر
children of all ages الأطفال من كل الأعمار	possible for ممكن لـ
decrease in نقص / تقليل في	significant decrease انخفاض ملحوظ
disagreeing strongly الرفض بشدة	that is because ذلك لأن
help out with ينتقل للمساعدة في	using = by using باستخدام
keep in mind يضع في الاعتبار	Yours faithfully المُخلص

6

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

lead to + n / (inf. + ing) يؤدي إلى	support ... with يدعم ... بـ
respond to يرد على - يستجيب لـ	

7

Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

argument - disagreement - dispute - quarrel

- **argument (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب)
- The traffic stopped because of an **argument** between two drivers.
- **disagreement (n)** خلاف (لا يتضمن التحدث بغضب)
- Mr Hassan left the room after a **disagreement** with the manager.
- **dispute (n)** نزاع - خلاف (عام أو قانوني وغالباً يستمر لفترة طويلة)
- The long legal **dispute** between the two companies has finally been ended.
- **quarrel (n)** جدال - خلاف (يتضمن التحدث بغضب ويستمر لفترة طويلة)
- The traffic stopped because of a **quarrel** between two drivers.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. His progress this term has been He has improved his level.
a. stressful b. satisfied c. discouraged d. satisfactory
2. I asked Mr Ayman to talk to the manager behalf of me.
a. on b. onto c. about d. into
3. I need to my points.
a. emphasise b. make c. deal d. a & b
4. "I expect him to respond to my complaint." Which of the following can replace 'respond' ?
a. Reply b. Repeat c. Ignore d. Ask
5. The adjective 'convenient' gives the meaning of
a. suitable b. unsuitable c. inappropriate d. affordable
6. People disabilities need special care.
a. with b. for c. about d. who's
7. Scientists are trying to find better alternatives to harmful traditional petrol engines.
a. use b. uses c. using d. used
8. They are some research into air pollution.
a. saving b. causing c. making d. doing
9. He is no volunteer. He paid.
a. builds b. shows c. takes d. gets
10. I'd like to the argument that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time.
a. save b. cause c. make d. do
11. "There's a significant difference between distance learning and face-to-face one." The adjective 'significant' in this context is the antonym of
a. meaningful b. insignificant c. remarkable d. a & c

12. "I expect him to respond to the injection الحُثْن." Which of the following gives the exact meaning of 'respond'?
- a. reply b. reply to c. ignore d. react
13. How many solutions do you have?
- a. alternative b. alternatives c. an alternative d. a & b
14. How many do you have?
- a. alternative b. alternatives c. an alternative d. a & b
15. You have to write back in to this email as soon as possible.
- a. argue b. argument c. respond d. response
16. You have to to this email as soon as possible.
- a. argue b. argument c. respond d. response
17. Every word in the poem has its
- a. signify b. significance c. significant d. significantly
18. Every word in the poem is
- a. signify b. significance c. significant d. significantly

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading texts

A speech about :

(WB page 10)

The future of public transport

I'd like to make the argument⁽¹⁾ that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because⁽²⁾ there will be lots of inexpensive⁽³⁾ and environmentally friendly⁽⁴⁾ forms⁽⁵⁾ of public transport. Another important⁽⁶⁾ point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be safer⁽⁷⁾, there will be alternatives⁽⁸⁾ to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and cycle⁽⁹⁾. It's important to keep in mind⁽¹⁰⁾ that these ways of travelling will lead to⁽¹¹⁾ a significant decrease⁽¹²⁾ in levels⁽¹³⁾ of pollution⁽¹⁴⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) نتم برهان - يبرهن
- (2) لأن
- (3) رخيص
- (4) صديق للبيئة
- (5) أشكال - أنواع
- (6) هام - ملحوظ
- (7) أكثر أماناً
- (8) بدائل
- (9) يركب دراجة
- (10) يأخذ بعين الاعتبار
- (11) يؤدي إلى
- (12) انخفاض
- (13) مستويات
- (14) التلوث

Part IV

Language

• راجع شرح المساعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تتويه

Exercise

On Language

• التدريبات مُرتبة تصاعديًا طبقًا لمستويات التفكير حسب هرم بلوم

تتويه

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- My daughter her exams until next weekend.
a. will be finishing b. won't be finished
c. will have finished d. won't have finished
- I expect we all the work by five o'clock this evening.
a. will have been done b. will have done
c. will be done d. will be doing
- Magdi finished work by eight o'clock tonight.
a. will have b. will have been
c. will be d. has
- The clear sky is a sign that it another sunny day.
a. will be b. is being c. is going to be d. will have been
- Scientists a cure علاج for most diseases by 2050.
a. won't discover b. will have discovered
c. has discovered d. will have been discovered
- I think several species of plants and animals disappeared by 2150.
a. will be b. will have been c. will have d. have
- Mr Ashraf checking our exam answers by Monday.
a. going to finish b. will be finished
c. will have finished d. will have been finished
- We in Cairo for five years next month.
a. will have been b. will be c. are going to be d. are being
- She started her new business by the time we meet again.
a. will be b. will have c. would have d. will have been
- You won't need to call them as they by lunchtime.
a. arriving b. going to arrive c. will be arrived d. will have arrived
- They dinner by the time we get there. There will be no food left.
a. will have b. will be had c. had had d. will have had

12. A few centuries from now, I hope wars become a thing from the past.
a. will have b. will have been c. had d. will be
13. got home by dinnertime tomorrow?
a. Will she be b. Will she have c. Have she d. Is she
14. In a year's time, he taken to يعتاد على some more serious sort of job.
a. has been b. had c. will have d. have
15. You done a lot of your work by the end of this month. You will be free then.
a. will have b. will be c. had d. have
16. My brother his studies by the time I have travelled to the USA.
a. will have completed b. will be completed
c. will have completing d. will have complete
17. You the book before the next class, won't you?
a. will have read b. won't have read
c. have read d. didn't read
18. How many reports completed by tomorrow?
a. will you be b. will you have
c. have you d. will you have been
19. By 2026, the population of Egypt to about 120 million.
a. will have been grown b. would grow
c. will be grown d. will have grown
20. Many of these vegetables become corrupt فاسدة before we cook them.
a. would have b. will have been c. will be d. will have
21. By the time I'm 25, I hope I a good job.
a. find b. will be found c. will have found d. am finding
22. By the age of 40, I married.
a. probably have got b. probably will
c. 'll probably d. 'll probably have got

2 Special cases

23. Ahmed's birthday after two weeks, on 26th April.
a. will have been b. is being c. is going to be d. will be
24. Five percent of the desert by 2100.
a. will have reclaimed b. will have been reclaimed
c. will reclaim d. would be reclaimed
25. In 2026, the population of Egypt to about 120 million.
a. will be grown b. will grow c. has grown d. have grown

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary,
Skills and
Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear). بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

rule (d) (v)

cliff (n)

beggar (n)

bleed – bled (v)

hungry for power

يحكم

منحدر صخري

متسول / شحات

يتزف دم

تواق للسلطة

pretend (ed) (v)

camp (ed) (v – n)

fall apart

find the way

يتظاهر بـ

يقيم معسكر – معسكر

ينهار – ينكسر

يلتصم الطريق

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There is a youth outside my town, near the mountains.

a. cliff b. camp c. revenge d. rule

2. I cut my finger this morning, but luckily, it did not very much.

a. kill b. fall apart c. rule d. bleed

3. Be careful when you walk near the , it is very high.

a. cliff b. camp c. revenge d. rule

4. If someone is cruel to you, you might want to take on him or her.

a. revenge b. rule c. kingdom d. storm

5. A king or queen has the power to over a country.

a. pretend b. rule c. deceive d. hold

6. Someone who really wants to lead a country is for power.

a. hungry b. thirsty c. angry d. worry

7. If someone is finding life very difficult because something bad has happened, you might say that he/she has apart.

a. spoken b. broken c. fallen d. taken

8. When you have nothing, there's nothing left to
 a. bring b. hide c. lose d. pretend
9. "I wish I didn't have to to be a beggar," said Edgar.
 a. bring b. hide c. lose d. pretend
10. If you really want to help, some clothes for this poor beggar.
 a. bring b. hide c. lose d. pretend

Part II Grammatical Hints

Should / If

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الاولى كالتالي:

- Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + will / can / may + inf. ...

- If Sama studies hard, she will get high marks.

= Should Sama study hard, she will get high marks.

- تُستخدم (Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية كالتالي:

Should + subj. + inf. ..., + subj. + would / could / might + inf. ...

- If Ahmed had enough time, he'd help me.

= Should Ahmed have enough time, he'd help me.

عبارات اسم الفاعل (inf. + ing) Present participle clauses

تبدأ هذه العبارات بـ (inf. + ing) وتُستخدم في حالة المبني للمعلوم، ويمكن أن تُستخدم بدلا من الروابط التالية:

① While / As بينما (Inf. + ing) ... = جملة مبنية للمعلوم + بينما

ex.: - While I was walking in the street, I lost my keys.

= Walking in the street, I lost my keys.

② When عندما (Inf. + ing) ... = جملة مبنية للمعلوم + عندما

ex.: - When I opened the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

= Opening the door of the room, I realised that Ahmed was asleep.

③ After / As soon as / Once بمجرد ان (Inf. + ing) ... = جملة مبنية للمعلوم + بمجرد ان

ex.: - As soon as Sama had arrived home, she turned on the lights.

= Arriving home, Sama turned on the lights.

4 ... **because** ... = **inf. + ing** ... **جملة مبنية للمعلوم + لأن**

ex.: - Because I was very ill, I didn't go to school.
= Being very ill, I didn't go to school.

5 **by + (Inf. + ing) / The + noun اسم + of = (Inf. + ing)**

ex.: - I kept warm in the cold weather by wearing a lot of clothes.
= I kept warm in the cold weather wearing a lot of clothes.
- I managed to open the door by the use of my sister's key.
= I managed to open the door using my sister's key.

6 ... **who / which / that + جملة وصل مبنية للمعلوم = (Inf. + ing)**

ex.: - The man who is wearing a black jacket is my uncle.
= The man wearing a black jacket is my uncle.
- The factory which produces a lot of pollution must be closed.
= The factory producing a lot of pollution must be closed.

Compound Adjectives الصفات المركبة

تتكون الصفة المركبة من كلمتين أو أكثر وبينهم (-) :

Expression	Hyphenated Adjective
Tools which have worn out	worn-out tools
A girl who is five years old	a five-year-old girl
A pole which is two and a half metres long	a two-and-a half-metre-long pole
A horse which is very friendly looking	a friendly-looking horse
A house which is ten years old	a ten-year old house
A ladder which is four metres long	a four-metre-long ladder
Rules which are easy to remember	easy-to-remember rules

stop

• **stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf.+ ing) = stop + obj. مفعول + (inf.+ ing) ... من أن ... يمنع**

- We must stop people from polluting the river.

= - We must stop people polluting the river.

• **stop + to + inf.**

- On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

• **stop + (inf. + ing)**

- My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

enjoy / love / consider + (inf. + ing)

- Ashraf enjoys drinking fresh juice.
- Nora loves writing poems.
- Salah considers playing for another club.
- تذكر أن الفعل (love) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:
- Mohamed loves meeting / to meet people from different countries.

Ways to express reason التعبير عن السبب

(inf. + ing) + بفضل / بسبب because of / due to / owing to / thanks to + جملة مضارع

= جملة مضارع تام / مضارع تام مستمر لأن + because / since / as + جملة مضارع

- I'm very tired because of working very hard all day.
- I'm very tired because I have been working very hard all day.
- Because of looking at the computer screen for a long time, he has problems with his sight.
- Because he has been looking at the computer screen for a long time, he has problems with his sight.

• **This / That is because + جملة سبب**

وذلك لأن

- I am very tired. That's because I have been working all day.
- He has a problem with his sight. This is because he has been looking at the computer screen for a long time.

equipment

كلمة (equipment) لا تعد وتُعامل مُعاملة المفرد:

- This equipment is very expensive. (Not: These equipments are ...)

Exercise On Language Hints

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- up next to the sea, Amira learned to swim when she was very young.
a. Growing b. Grow c. She grew d. Grew
- Picking up her pen, Samira to write a letter to her friend in Italy.
a. start b. had started c. started d. starting
- along the street, my sister and I saw a famous athlete!
a. To walk b. Walk c. Walked d. Walking
- Driving into town, we saw that the streets were full of people their shopping.
a. do b. did c. had done d. doing

5. Tarek fell over, over a table at the same time.
a. knocking b. knock c. knocked d. to knock
6. she go now, she would catch the train.
a. Should b. If c. Unless d. In case
7. He was punished the mistake he had made.
a. that's because b. because c. due to d. a & b
8. He was punished. he had made a big mistake.
a. That's because b. Because c. Due to d. a & b
9. The equipment of the classrooms been delivered.
a. is b. has c. are d. have
10. I started to change my mind about the new car. I consider for my money back.
a. to ask b. ask c. to asking d. asking
11. Sama stopped fizzy drinks because they are unhealthy.
a. drinking b. to drink c. to drinking d. drink
12. Yara stopped some water because she was thirsty.
a. drinking b. to drink c. to drinking d. drink
13. The policeman stopped me my car in this 'No Parking' area.
a. parking b. from parking c. a & b d. to park
14. Our flat has a ceiling.
a. four metres high b. four metre high
c. four-metres-high d. four-metre-high
15. There was a wind.
a. thirtieth-kilometre-an-hour b. thirtieth kilometre an hour
c. thirty kilometre an hour d. thirty-kilometre-an-hour

Part III

Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- هناك بعض التعبيرات الخاصة برسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تختلف في اللغة العامية عن اللغة الدارجة مثل :

	Formal	Informal
1.	Dear Sir or Madam عزيري السيد / السيدة	Hello / Hi مرحباً
2.	We would be very grateful if ... could ... سنكون ممتنين لو أن ...	Please could you ...? هل يمكن أن ... من فضلك؟
3.	The ... is not satisfactory ... إن ... ليس مرضياً	The ... isn't good enough. إن ... ليس جيداً بما يكفي

4.	As a result, لذلك	Because of that لهذا السبب
5.	I would suggest that أود أن أقترح أن ...	One idea is ... أحد الأفكار هي أن
6.	I would be very happy to ... يُسعدني أن ...	It would be no problem to ... لا توجد مشكلة في أن ...
7.	Should you have any further questions, please respond to this email. إذا كان لديكم مزيد من الاستفسارات، يمكنكم الرد على هذه الرسالة	Write to me if you need to know anything else. راسلني إذا أردت أن تعرف أي شيء آخر.
8.	Yours faithfully المُخلص	Bye إلى اللقاء

Model Email

Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a)@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a)@student.com

From : nabil.a@student.com

To : nadi.a@student.com

Subject : advantages and disadvantages of smartphones

Dear Nadi(a),

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly. Smart phones have a lot of applications that allow you to know and follow everything through them. And, believe it or not, you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,
Nabil(a)

2 Speaking skill مهارة التحدث

① Expressions from a debate تعبيرات من مناظرة

هناك بعض التعبيرات التي تستخدم في المناظرات (النقاشات)، اليك بعضها في الجدول التالي:

Function الوظيفة اللغوية	Expression التعبير المستخدم
Asking for an opinion السؤال عن الرأي	What would you say to that? ما الذي يمكنك قوله في هذا الشأن؟
Disagreeing strongly الرفض الشديد	I'm sorry, but that isn't true. إنني مُتأسف لكن ذلك غير صحيح.
Emphasising a point التأكيد على نقطة / رأي	I think the answer is quite clear. أعتقد أن الرد / الجواب واضح إلي حد ما.
Interrupting المقاطعة	Can I just say something here? هل يمكنني أن أقول شيئاً في هذه النقطة؟
Showing doubt or disagreement إبداء الشك أو عدم الاتفاق	I'm not so sure about that. لست متأكداً جداً من ذلك.

② Formal and informal Expressions تعبيرات رسمية ودارجة

هناك بعض المفردات التي تختلف في اللغة الدارجة عن اللغة الرسمية مثل:

Formal Language اللغة الرسمية	Informal Language اللغة الدارجة	Meaning المعنى
on behalf of	for	من أجل / لصالح
issues	problems	مشكلات
current	present	الحالي
consider working	like to work	يود أن يعمل
satisfactory	good enough	مُرضي - جيد بما فيه الكفاية
convenient	good for you	مُلائم - مناسب لك

3 الترجمة Translation

① Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

When we talk about "smart transportation", it is more than moving cargo from A to B. Digitalization within transport and logistics means seamless service to our customers.

- أ. عندما نتحدث عن "النقل الذكي"، فهو أكثر من مجرد نقل البضائع من مكان إلى آخر. فالأرقام داخل النقل والخدمات اللوجستية تعني خدمة سلسلة لعملائنا.
- ب. عندما نتحدث عن "النقل الذكي"، فهو أكثر من مجرد نقل البضائع من مكان إلى آخر. فالرقمنة داخل النقل والخدمات اللوجستية تعني خدمة سلسلة لعملائنا.
- ج. عندما نتحدث عن "النقل الذكي"، فهو أكثر من مجرد نقل البضائع من مكان إلى آخر. فالرقمنة داخل النقل والخدمات اللوجستية تعني خدمة ثالثة لعملائنا.
- د. عندما نتحدث عن "النقل الذكي"، فهو ليس مجرد نقل البضائع من مكان إلى آخر. فالرقمنة داخل النقل والخدمات اللوجستية تعني خدمة سلسلة لعملائنا.

② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. هناك وسائل كثيرة حديثة لنقل الناس والبضائع. أكثرها سرعة هي الطائرة، وتعد السفن العملاقة والسكك الحديدية الوسائل الأفضل لنقل البضائع علي نطاق واسع وفي وقت قصير إلى حد ما.

- a. There are many modern ways of transporting people and goods. The fastest is the plane, and the giant ships and railways are the best mean of transporting goods on a large scale and in a fairly short time.
- b. There are many modern means of transporting people and goods. The fastest is the plane, and the giant ships and railways are the best means of transporting good on a large scale and in a fairly short time.
- c. There are many modern ways of transporting people and goods. The most fast is the plane, and the giant ships and railways are the best means of transporting goods on a large scale and in a fairly short time.
- d. There are many modern means of transporting people and goods. The fastest is the plane, and the giant ships and railways are the best means of transporting goods on a large scale and in a fairly short time.

٢. من المؤكد أن التكنولوجيا لن تتوقف عن تقديم الحلول الأفضل في مجال النقل والمواصلات، وذلك لمواجهة التوسع المستمر للمدن والزيادة المستمرة في عدد السكان.

- a. Certainly, technology will not stop proving the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population.
- b. Certainly, technology will stop supplying the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population.
- c. Certainly, technology will not stop offering the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in pollution.

- d. It is certain that technology will not stop providing the best solutions in the field of transportation, in order to meet the continuous expansion of cities and the continuous increase in population.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للمتقدمين فقط

تلاوة

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

alternative

- **alternative (adj)** (صفة تأتي فقط قبل الاسم)
 - The boss said that he has a plan which is **alternative**. (X)
 - The boss said that he has an **alternative** plan. (✓)
- **alternative (adj)** مُخْتَلِف - مُغَايِر (صفة تأتي غالباً قبل الاسم)
 - In modern cities, people have an **alternative** lifestyle.
- **alternative (n)** بديل - اختيار آخر
 - I had no **alternative** but to report him to the police.
- **alternative to + n / (inf.+ing)** بديل - اختيار آخر لـ
 - I had no **alternative** to reporting him to the police.
- have no alternative
- leave somebody with no alternative
- a practical / safe alternative

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

ليس لديه اختيار بديل

لا يترك له مجال للاختيار - يفرض عليه

بديل عملي / آمن

argument

- **argue (with) (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (مع)
 - The teacher was angry because Soha continued to **argue with** her friend during the lesson.
- **argue about / over (v)** يجادل - يتنازع (علي / بشأن)
 - These two girls **argue over** everything.
- **argue (for / against) (v)** يترافع - يحاجج (مع / ضد)
 - My mother **argued for** keeping our old car.
 - My mother **argued against** selling our old car.
- **argue + شخص + into + (inf.+ing)** يَنتَع ... أن يقوم بـ ...
 - I **argued** my mother **into** selling our old car.
- **arguable = debatable (adj)** مشكوك فيه - قابل للجدل والمناقشة
 - His skills as a teacher are **arguable**.

- **argumentative (adj)** مُحِبُّ للجدَل
- My daughter is argumentative. She is never persuaded easily.
 - **argument (with / over / about) (n)** خلاف - نزاع (مع / بشأن)
- He felt sorry after his argument with his wife.
 - **argument (for / against) (n)** حجة - دليل - مرافعة (مع / ضد) عمل
- He made a good argument against child labour.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- for the sake of argument لمجرد النقاش - فلنفترض جدلاً
 - do something without argument يفعل ... دون نقاش
 - argument in favour of حجج في صالح
 - bitter / furious / fierce / violent argument نقاش حاد

connection

- **connect (to / with) (v)** يربط - يُوصَل
- The new road connects our village to the nearest town.
 - **connect (with) (v)** يرتبط - يكون علي علاقة بـ
- He finds it easy to connect with other people.
 - **connected (to / with / by) (adj)** متصل بـ / مرتبط بـ - علي علاقة بـ
- Our school is connected to the internet.
 - **connection (to / with / between) = link (n)** اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
- I can't understand the connection between these two people.
- لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- have a connection to / with علي علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
 - see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
 - make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
 - stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

expansion

- **expand (v)** ينكمش / يتقلص - يَقلُّ **contract** ≠ يتمدد - يتوسّع - يتزايد
- Metals expand when they are heated.
- **expand (v)** يتوسّع
- Our company has expanded its business by adding new products.
- **expandable (adj)** قابل للتوسعة أو الزيادة
- This tablet has an expandable memory.

• **expansion (of / in) = growth (n)**

- The **expansion** in student numbers makes it necessary to build new schools.

التمدد - الزيادة - التوسع

- a big / huge / great / massive expansion
- a major / significant expansion
- urban expansion
- expansion plan / programme

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
توسع هائل
زيادة ملحوظة
التوسع في المدن
برنامج / خطة التوسع أو الزيادة

facilities

• **facilities (n)**

- Sharm has a lot of tourist **facilities**.

تسهيلات - مرافق - امكانيات (دائماً جمع)

• **facility (n)**

- The club has a large **facility** for indoor sports.

منشأة / مركز (الغرض معيّن)

• **facility (n)**

- Rokaya has a clear **facility** for drawing.

موهبة / ملكة

• **facilitate(d) (v)**

- The internet has **facilitated** getting information.

يسّـر - يُسهّل

• **facilitation (n)**

- The **facilitation** of getting information was one of the advantages of the internet.

التيسير - التسهيل

• **facilitator (n)**

- A teacher sometimes acts as a **facilitator**.

ميسّر

public

• **publicise(d) / publicize(d) (v)**

- The government **publicised** the new employment law.

ينشر - يشيع - يروج لـ

• **publicity (n)**

- Smoking has received bad **publicity** over the last years.

دُيُوع - شعبية - شهرة

• **publicity (n)**

- Good **publicity** increases the sales.

الدعاية

- bad / negative / adverse publicity

- get / receive / gain publicity

- the glare of publicity

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

الدعاية أو الشهرة السلبية

ينال شهرة أو دعاية

الشهرة الشديدة - ضريبة الشهرة

- **public (adj)**

- Social Media attract public attention.

عامي - شعبي (يخص عامة الشعب)

- **public (adj)** خاص / شخصي **private** ≠ عام (متاح للجميع) - حكومي

لاحظ أن كلمة (public) بالمعنى السابق تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط:

- It is better if we use transport which is public. (X)
- It is better if we use public transport. (✓)

- **public (adj)**

- The governor is a public figure.

معروف - ظاهر

- **the public (n)**

الجمهور - العامة - المأ (يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)

- The public don't / doesn't support the new law.

- **in public**

- Don't talk about this plan in public. It is secret.

علي المأ

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- go public on /with
- public property

يعلن عن / يكشف النقاب عن
ملكية عامة

respond

- **respond (to / that) (v)**

يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)

- Omar didn't respond to my last email.
- She responded that she didn't want to come with us.

- **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)**

يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)

- The manager responded to the complaint and increased my salary.

- **respond (to) (v)**

يتحسن (نتيجة ل)

- Mum didn't respond to this medicine.

- **responsive (to) (adj)** غير مستجيب ل **unresponsive (to)** مستجيب ل - متجاوب مع

- The pain was responsive to this painkiller. مسكن

- **response (to) (n)**

استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)

- Her response to my suggestion was disappointing. مخيب للآمال
- I am waiting for your response to my offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in response to
- a positive response
- get / receive a response

رداً علي - استجابة ل
رد سلبي negative response - استحسان - رد إيجابي
يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة

transport

ينقل - يُوصَّل

• transport (v)

- This truck transports oxygen cylinders to hospitals.

• transport (v)

(يُنْفِي (يُبْعِد شخص إلى دولة بعيدة كنوع من العقاب)

- In our history lesson, we knew that Ahmed Oraby was transported to Sri Lanka.

• Transport = transportation (n)

النقل - التوصيل (كلمة لا تُعد بهذا المعنى)

- Public transports help protect the environment. (X)

- Public transport helps protect the environment. (✓)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- road transport النقل البرّي - rail transport النقل بالحديدية

- air transport النقل الجوي - public transport النقل العام

- private transport

- a means / form / mode of transport

سيارة خاصة (ملاكي)
وسيلة نقل أو مواصلات

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تدريب: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ▶

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't know how you could him into accepting the offer. He refused it at first.

a. transport b. publicise c. facilitate d. argue

2. Amira is a real artist. She has got an amazing for drawing.

a. publicity b. facility c. transportation d. expansion

3. In the past, some leaders were for political reasons.

a. responded b. transported c. facilitated d. signified

4. The public waiting for the important match.

a. am b. is c. are d. b & c

5. A secretary is supposed to have the ability to with all staff members.

a. practise b. pronounce c. connect d. salute

6. My cold well to this antibiotic.

a. damaged b. spread c. responded d. sneezed

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	المتن (يقع ... في) (argue ... into)
2.	b	مركز / مرافق (facility) (ما تسمى)
3.	b	النقل (ينقل) (ما يعني) (transport)
4.	d	الاسم (يمكن أن يخدم لكل للجمهور (the public)
5.	c	النقل (يرتبط) (ما يعني) (connect)
6.	c	المتن (يستجيب للعلاج بهذا المضاد الحيوي) (respond to this antibiotic)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تتويج : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- By 2020, he a house in Cairo. He has got a promise that his father will do so.
a. will have bought b. will have been bought
c. will be bought d. will be buying
- I am sure that tomorrow you all about these rules. You will break them again.
a. will be forgotten b. won't forget
c. won't have forgotten d. will have forgotten
- Before you leave home, your belongings
a. will have been collected b. will have collected
c. will collect d. will be collecting
- Next year, he a farmer for 20 years.
a. will have been b. will be c. is going to be d. is being
- By the time I'm a father, students much better schools.
a. will attend b. will have attended
c. will be attended d. will have been attended

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	الجملة مستقبل تام مبني للمجهول
2.	d	المعنى يتطلب مستقبل تام مثبت والجملة منبئة للمعلوم
3.	a	الجملة منبئة للمجهول
4.	a	سينكرون قد أتم عشرين عامًا من العمل كزارع
5.	a	سينكرون الحدث قائم في ذلك الوقت في المستقبل لذلك لا يستخدم المستقبل التام

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً

- **Create**



- 98

15. I've just got an idea. Take the shopping home and I to the central to pay the bill.

- a. going to go b. am going c. goes d. will go

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(الملي ٢٠٢٢)

Organizations that build digital media products rely on multi-skilled teams and manage those teams with business processes designed to enhance their efficiency and effectiveness. For example, making a game requires storytellers, programmers, artists, data analysts, user experience designers, project managers and animators. **"Throwing things over the wall"** between separated groups of experts is not an effective way to manage things. You have to ensure that they understand each other, work together creatively, and collectively achieve a result that delivers a world-class experience. The skills required to manage these multi-skilled team members and the fast-paced nature of the industry means that digital media producers have to have communication and collaboration skills as well as a depth and breadth غير مسبوقه of knowledge that is unprecedented عمق التفكير.

Team members are educated on these two aspects – working in multi-skilled teams and engaging with a wide range of modern, creative business processes – while making digital media products that deliver value for people. Programs are designed to help graduates develop several main abilities that will serve them well in their careers.

A program should cater well to members with an entrepreneurial vision. In addition to developing their business skills, they also improve their abilities to pitch, seek the right partners and investors, and manage resources. **It** should offer specified project and 'venture internship' مشروع تدريب options to help members create and launch a new business with a new digital media product.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The underlined phrase **"Throwing things over the wall"** in the passage means
a. living in separate rooms b. learning how to shoot
c. increasing of good relationships d. lack of good relationships
- According to the passage, a successful digital media production needs a/an business.
a. teamwork b. personally-skilled
c. individual d. family
- The team should have skills.
a. communication b. happiness c. carelessness d. laziness
- Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
a. The Downsides of Digital Media b. The Merits of Digital Media
c. Digital Media Teams d. The Dangers of Digital Media
- The underlined pronoun **It** in the last paragraph refers to the
a. team member b. partner c. visitor d. program

6. The most important cause of success in a digital media team is
 a. cooperation b. designs c. colours d. skills
7. How can a member do his role in a team ?
 a. In isolation from others b. Together with the other members
 c. On his own d. Better than the other members
8. Digital production team members should have
 a. fighting b. bad skills
 c. entertainments d. venture internship

3

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

There is no justifiable reason why our electricity, heating, cooling, and transportation needs aren't powered by 100 percent renewable energy.

- أ. لا يوجد سبب مبرر لعدم تلبية احتياجاتنا من الكهرباء والتدفئة والتبريد والنقل بنسبة ١٠٠٪ من الطاقة الجديدة.
 ب. لا يوجد سبب مبرر لعدم تلبية احتياجاتنا من الكهرباء والتدفئة والتجميد والنقل بنسبة ١٠٠٪ من الطاقة المتجددة.
 ج. لا يوجد سبب مبرر لعدم تلبية احتياجاتنا من الكهرباء والتدفئة والتبريد والنقل بنسبة ١٠٠٪ من الطاقة المتجددة.
 د. لا يوجد سبب مبرر لتلبية احتياجاتنا من الكهرباء والتدفئة والتبريد والنقل بنسبة ١٠٠٪ من الطاقة المتجددة.

4

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يعتبر القطار أحادي الخط طفرة كبيرة في عالم النقل والمواصلات، فهو ليس فقط مجرد وسيلة سريعة للسفر والتنقل بين المدن، لكنه أيضا أكثر أمانا مقارنة بوسائل النقل الأخرى.

- a. The single-line train is considered a major leap in the world of transportation, as it is only a fast means of travel and movement between cities, but it is also safer compared to other means of transportation.
 b. The monorail is considered a major breakthrough in the world of transportation, as it is not only a fast means of travel and movement between cities, but it is also safer compared to other means of transportation.
 c. The monorail is considered a major breakthrough in the world of transportation, as it is not only a fast means of travel and movement between cities, but it is also safer compared to other means of transportation.
 d. The single-line train is considering a major breakthrough in the world of transportation, as it is not only a fast means of travel and movement between cities, but it is also safer compared to other means of transportation.

5

Write an essay of about 180 words on :

High-tech has made life easier and faster

Your email is rami22@gmail.com and your friend's email is sami11@gmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

تنويه

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة✧ **Reading :**

An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips

✧ **Writing :**

An email on the best solution to a local problem; An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering

✧ **Listening :**

A news report about the protection of the environment

✧ **Speaking :**

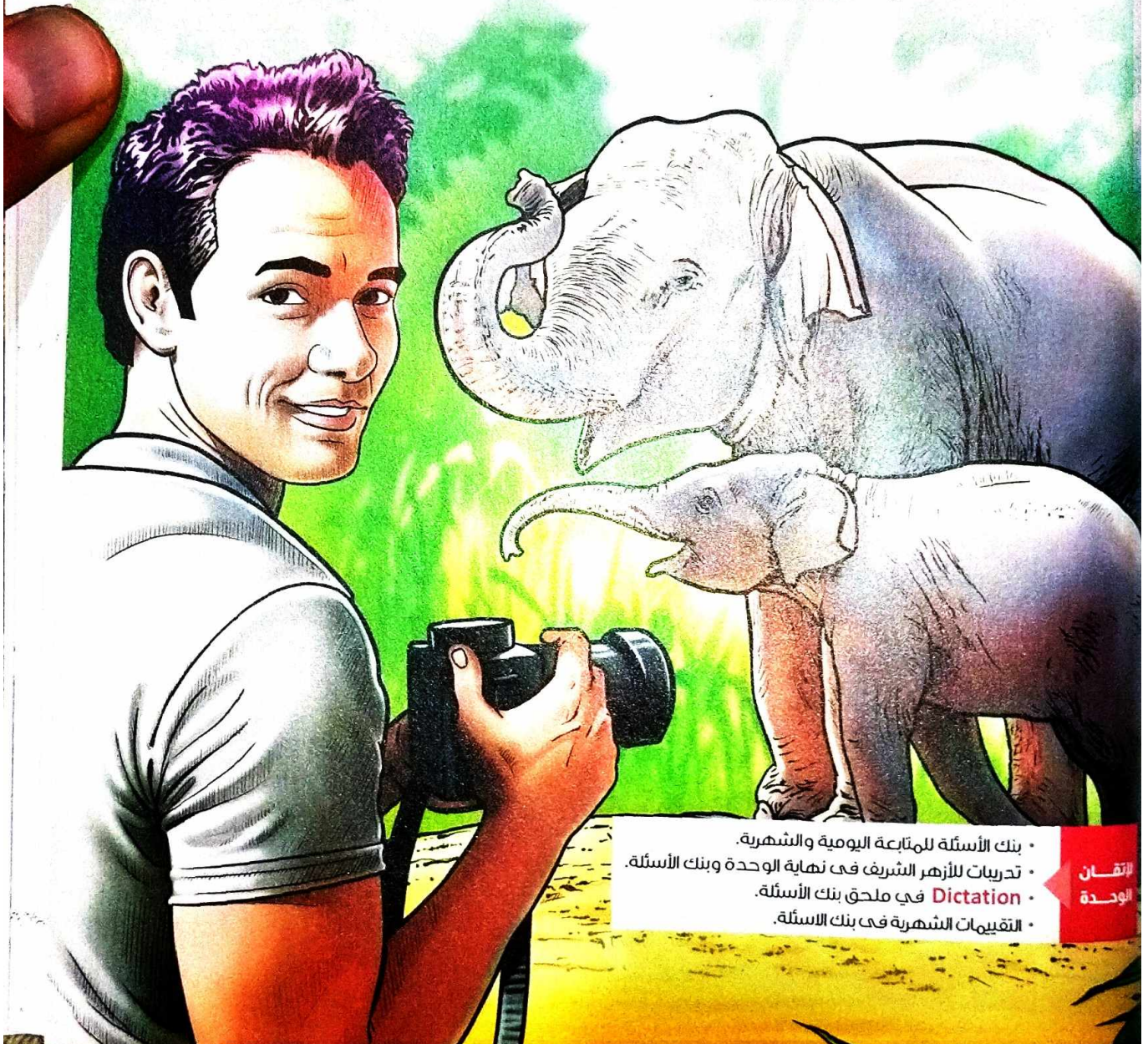
Discussing the benefits of volunteering;
Discussing problems and choosing the best solution

✧ **Language :**

Comparative phrases;
Used to / didn't use to

✧ **Life skills :**

Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration



• بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
• **Dictation** في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
• التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

لائحة
الوحدة



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biodiversity(n)	التنوع البيولوجي	native(adj)	محلي
challenging(adj)	تنطوي على تحدي	preserve(d) (v)	يصون - يحمي
conservation(n)	حماية البيئة - حفظ	rewarding(adj)	مُجزّي
exactly(adv)	تماماً - بالضبط	scholarship(n)	منحة دراسية
expedition(n)	بعثة استكشافية	slightly(adv)	بدرجة طفيفة
inhabitant (n)	أحد سُكان - قاطن	species(n)	نوع - أنواع
native inhabitants(n)	السكان المحليين	survival(n)	البقاء - النجاة

• من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

advert(n)	إعلان	livestock(n)	الماشية
barrier(n)	حاجز - سد	male (n - adj.)	ذكر - مُذكر
bay(n)	خليج	monitor(ed) (v)	يرصد - يراقب
caring (adj)	مُهتم / مراعي	original(adj)	أصلي - أساسي
colony(n)	مستعمرة	partly(adj)	جزئياً
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	progress(ed) (n - v)	التقدم - يتقدم
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	rainforest(n)	غابة مطيرة
coral (n - adj)	المرجان - مرجاني	realise(d) (v)	يُبرك
council(n)	مجلس - قنصلية	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف علي
creature(n)	مخلوق - كائن	recycling(n)	تلوير - إعادة تصنيع
crop(n)	محصول	reef(n)	حيد - شعب مرجاني
digital(adj)	رقمي	rides(n)	جولات
diver(n)	غواص	sports field(n)	ملعب رياضي
economy(n)	الاقتصاد	starfish(n)	نجم البحر
endangered(adj)	مُعَرَّض للخطر - مُهدَّد	state(n)	حالة
ensure(d) (v)	يضمن / يتأكد	support(ed) (v - n)	يدعم - دعم
exotic(adj)	أجنبي - غريب - مثير	task(n)	مهمة
face(d) (v)	يواجه	threat(n)	تهديد
female (n - adj)	أنثى - مؤنث	tusk(n)	سنُّ الفيل

fight - fought(v)
forest(n)
generation(n)
industry(n)
involved(adj)
keep - kept
limit(n)

يقاتل - يتقاتل
الغابة
جيل
صناعة - نشاط
مُشارك - مشغول
يحافظ على - يُوفّر
حد

typical(adj)
unique(adj)
variety(n)
waste(d) (n - v)
well-known(adj)
wildlife(n)

أصلي - نموذجي
فريد - متميز
التنوع - التعددية
نفايات - يبدد / يهدر
مشهور
الحياة البرية

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

تنويه

3

تعريفات Definitions

Memorise	Understand
biodiversity(n) التنوع البيولوجي	the variety of plants and animals in a particular place
challenging(adj) تنطوي علي تحدّي	interesting but difficult to do
expedition(n) بعثة استكشافية	- a long and carefully organized journey to an unfamiliar place - the people that make a long, difficult journey to study or know about wildlife
native inhabitants(n) السكان المحليين	the people who first lived in the country
preserve(d) (v) يصون - يحمي - يحفظ طعام	- to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed - to store food for a long time after treating معالجة it so that it will not decay يتحلل
scholarship(n) منحة دراسية	an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education
species(n) نوع - أنواع	a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Living things need food, water and sometimes oxygen for
a. species b. conservation c. biodiversity d. survival

2. Your car is different from mine. I can hardly notice the difference.
a. exact b. slight c. slightly d. exactly
3. If we want to keep natural balance in forests, we need to protect there.
a. biodiversity b. conservation c. preservation d. challenges
4. I came first and won a to study medicine in the USA.
a. reward b. scholarship c. starfish d. variety
5. Forests must be as they are the main source of the oxygen we breathe.
a. preserved b. resulted c. challenged d. cared
6. The of ancient Egyptian monuments is important.
a. waste b. expedition c. conservation d. opportunity
7. A team of scientists went on a / an to the Western Desert to study wildlife there.
a. generation b. creature c. conclusion d. expedition
8. As an astronaut, my first mission مهمة in space was really a one. It was difficult but interesting.
a. suitable b. specific c. challenging d. rewarding
9. I am Egyptian. I am a Arabic speaker.
a. native b. foreigner c. second d. a & b
10. The Nubians are the native of the south of Egypt and north of Sudan.
a. variety b. inhabitants c. support d. habitats
11. The panda is an endangered of animals.
a. spices b. species c. spaces d. prices
12. Well done, Sama! That's what we need.
a. exact b. slight c. exactly d. slightly
13. The baby gave its mother a smile.
a. mental b. paid c. native d. rewarding

2 Important vocabulary

14. Mohamed Salah is for his voluntary work.
(المتحان الالكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
a. satisfied b. well-known c. dissatisfied d. mysterious
15. The bright sunshine is of Aswan's weather in winter.
a. typical b. exotic c. original d. male
16. The local has decided to renew the asphalt of the streets.
a. barrier b. council c. economy d. livestock
17. I what happens in the shop through cameras.
a. develop b. pay c. benefit d. monitor
18. Tourists come from all over the world to see our monuments آثار .
a. suitable b. valueless c. unique d. a & c

19. A is a part of the sea that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land.
a. progress b. state c. bay d. colony
20. I like those birds you see near the river in summer.
a. exotic b. typed c. coral d. male
21. If a type of animals is, this means it may die out ينقرض soon.
a. dangerous b. endangered c. strong d. strange
22. The rabbit is a nice
a. generation b. variety c. creature d. opportunity
23. Parents work hard to that their children get enough care.
a. inspire b. ensure c. reward d. face
24. Tunisia was a French
a. progress b. state c. bay d. colony
25. Wars affect the world's badly. Businesses make great losses.
a. barrier b. council c. economy d. livestock
26. plastic and glass is possible.
a. Recycling b. Rewarding c. Arising d. Threatening
27. The development of education will help the young
a. generations b. variety c. creatures d. opportunities
28. Pollution is a real to mankind البشرية.
a. recycling b. male c. female d. threat
29. He is a member of the team in supporting the charity.
a. involved b. caring c. psychological d. coral
30. My students have made reasonable recently.
a. progress b. colony c. bay d. state
31. Keeping is an important source of income to farmers.
a. barrier b. council c. economy d. livestock
32. This restaurant offers a / an of sea dishes.
a. generation b. variety c. creature d. opportunity

3 Definitions

33. To is to save something or someone from being harmed or destroyed.
a. run b. endanger c. ensure d. preserve
34. A/An is an amount of money that is given to someone by an educational organization to help pay for their education.
a. species b. scholarship c. biodiversity d. expedition
35. A/An is a group of animals or plants whose members are similar and can breed together to produce young animals or plants.
a. species b. scholarship c. biodiversity d. expedition

36. is the variety of plants and animals in a particular place.
 a. Species b. Scholarship
 c. Biodiversity d. Expedition challenging
37. means interesting but difficult to do.
 a. Preservative b. Significant c. Challenging d. Endangered
38. A/An is a long and carefully organized journey to an unfamiliar place.
 a. species b. scholarship c. biodiversity d. expedition
39. Native are the people who first lived in the country.
 a. habits b. inhabitants c. inhibits d. exhibits

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتوييه ساعد فُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	have	a bath	يستحم
fight	pollution	يكافح التلوث	make	a decision	يتخذ قرار
keep	clean	يبقى ... نظيفًا		space for	يفسح المجال لـ
	facilities	يوفر تسهيلات	stay	calm	يبقى هادئًا

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
native(adj)	محلي - أصلي
native(n)	مواطن
preserve	يحفظ - يحمي
rewarding	مُجزٍ
	original
	citizen
	conserve, protect
	satisfying, pleasing, worthwhile

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
challenging	تنطوي على تحدي	easy, uninspiring	سهل
male	ذكر	female	أنثى
native(adj)	محلي - أصلي	immigrant	مهاجر
native(n)	مواطن	foreigner, outsider	أجنبي / وافد
rewarding	مُجزٍ	unrewarding	غير مُجزٍ

4

Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

challenge		
challenge (v)	يتحدى	- He accepted to challenge me to a tennis game.
challenge (n)	تحدي	- He accepted my challenge to a tennis game.
challenging (adj)	تنطوي على تحدي	- I enjoy challenging tasks.
conservation		
conserve (v)	يصون - يحافظ على	- It is our duty واجب to conserve the environment.
conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - حفظ	- The conservation of the environment is our duty.
conservationist (n)	مُحافظ على البيئة	- Conservationists try to protect the environment.
conservative (adj)	مُحافظ	- Mr Mohammed is a conservative person.
inhabitant		
inhabit (v)	يسكن - يقطن	- The pharaohs inhabited Egypt thousands of years ago.
inhabitant (n)	ساكن/ قاطن	- The inhabitants of this island speak Spanish.
inhabited (adj)	مسكون/ مأهول	- This island is inhabited, not deserted مهجور.
preserve		
preserve (v)	يصون - يحمي	- Salt is used to preserve some foods.
preservative (n)	مادة حافظة	- Salt is a preservative for some foods.
preservation (n)	حماية/ صيانة	- Salt is used for the preservation of some foods.
preserved (adj)	محفوظ	- Some preserved foods are harmful.

5

Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

coloured coral	المرجان الملون	ready for	مستعد لـ
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
in digital form	بصيغة رقمية	unique biodiversity	التنوع البيولوجي الفريد

interested in	مهتم به	well-known for	مشهور به
involved in	مُتورط في	what is more,	بالإضافة لذلك
land animals	الحيوانات البرية	work on a farm	العمل في مزرعة
original state	الحالة الأصلية		

6 فعل + حرف جر Verb + Preposition

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	love + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يُحِبُّ أن
care for	يرعى - يهتم به	play with	يلعب به / مع
fight for	يكافح / يقاتل من أجل	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
look after	يرعى - يعتني به		

7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

well-known + as / for / to

- **well-known as** + (ميزة مشهور بها) / (وظيفة / مهنة / مشهور كـ)
 - Mohammed Salah is well-known as a footballer.
 - Egypt is well-known as a peace-loving country.
- **well-known for** + اسم يدل على سبب الشهرة مشهور به
 - Mohammed Salah is well-known for his skills.
 - Aswan is well-known for its warm weather in winter.
- **well-known to** + اشخاص / شخص مشهور لدى
 - Mohammed Salah is well-known to football fans all over the world.
 - Aswan is well-known to tourists.

dangerous - endangered

- **dangerous** خطير
 - COVID- 19 is a dangerous disease.
 - He was in a dangerous situation.
- **danger (n)** الخطر
 - Keep children away from danger.
- **endanger(ed) (v)** يُعرِّض للخطر
 - Don't endanger children.
- **endangered (adj)** مُعرِّض للخطر - في موقف خطير
 - Lions are endangered. They might die out soon.
 - The people who live in this old house are endangered.
- **endangerment (n)** التعريض للخطر
 - He was arrested for child endangerment.

schooling - scholarship

• schooling

التعليم المدرسي

- My mother had only three years of schooling.

• scholarship

منحة دراسية

- Sama won a scholarship to the German University.

diversity - biodiversity

• diversity = variety

التعددية / التنوع

- Modern societies have to respect cultural diversity.

• biodiversity

التنوع النباتي والحيواني (التنوع البيولوجي)

- We must protect the biodiversity of the forests.

لاحظ أن البادئة (bio) تعني (متعلق بالكائنات الحية - عضوي)

- bio- = relating to or using living things

- biology الكيمياء العضوية - علم الأحياء

Exercise

On Vocabulary study

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You need to make
a. calm b. clean c. a decision d. problems
- "It is our duty to preserve our environment". In this sentence, 'preserve' can be replaced by
a. conserve b. protect c. affect d. a & b
- Something that is 'rewarding' is
a. unrewarding b. native c. satisfying d. uninspiring
- "He is not a native of Egypt". He is a
a. strong b. foreigner c. patriot d. citizen
- I love my daughter Rody, not Rodayna.
a. calling b. to be called c. to call d. a & c
- The best solution is to this problem.
a. face b. cause c. have d. stay
- All world countries have to unite to pollution.
a. fight b. go c. provide d. give

8. We need to use a / an to keep this food useful.
 a. inhabit b. inhabitant c. preserve d. preservative
9. We need to this food to keep it useful.
 a. inhabit b. inhabitant c. preserve d. preservative
10. The Pharaohs Egypt and had a great civilization thousands of years ago.
 a. inhabited b. inhabitants c. preserved d. preservation
11. The Pharaohs were the first of Egypt and they had a great civilization thousands of years ago.
 a. inhabited b. inhabitants c. preserved d. preservation
12. To me, swimming across the Nile was a real
 a. challenge b. challenging c. challenged d. challenges
13. To me, swimming across the Nile was really
 a. challenge b. challenging c. challenged d. challenges
14. He loves nature and he is interested in
 a. conserve b. conservative c. conservationist d. conservation
15. He loves nature and he is an active
 a. conserve b. conservative c. conservationist d. conservation
16. Ahmed Zaki is well-known his great films.
 a. as b. for c. to d. about
17. Ahmed Zaki is well-known a great actor.
 a. as b. for c. to d. about
18. Ahmed Zaki is well-known most Egyptian people.
 a. as b. for c. to d. about
19. It is important to protect species of animal and plants from dying out الانتراض.
 a. endangered b. dangerous c. diverse d. biodiverse
20. is necessary for natural balance التوازن.
 a. Endangered b. Dangerous c. Conservationist d. Biodiversity

Part IV

Language

1 Comparative Expressions

عبارات المقارنة

Remember

تذكر

تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما:

- Rodayna is older than Ahmed.
- A car is fast, but a plane is faster.
- Films are more exciting than plays.
- Bread is less expensive than meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة (التي تتكون من مقطع واحد):
 1. يُضاف المقطع (-er) لنهاية الصفة:

- quiet → quieter
- cheap → cheaper
- narrow → narrower

2. إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بحرف (e) قبلها حرف ساكن يُضاف لها حرف (r) فقط:

- wide → wider
- nice → nicer
- large → larger
- simple → simpler

3. إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك واحد يليه ساكن واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (er):

- hot → hotter
- fat → fatter
- thin → thinner

4. الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) الي (ier):

- lucky → luckier
- healthy → healthier
- easy → easier

- تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة:

more / less + adj. + than

- more / less expensive than
- more / less terrifying than
- more / less exciting than
- more / less dangerous than

Comparative Phrases! عبارات المقارنة

1 No difference

لا يوجد اختلاف

Exactly the same as

يشبه ... تماما

وتستخدم هذه العبارة عند التعبير عن التطابق (عدم وجود اختلاف) بين طرفين:

- ex.: - This car is exactly the same as my car.
 - Your bag is exactly the same as Aya's bag.

في حالة وجود مفعول فإنه يوضع بين (the same ... as) كالتالي:

- ex.: - Omar is exactly the same age as Ali.
 - My father does exactly the same job as your father.

2 A small difference

اختلاف بسيط

almost as + صفة + as

يشبه ... إلى حد كبير

قليلا عن / من ... + صفة مقارنة + than

نستخدم (almost as ... as) أو (slightly ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- ex.: - Mariam is almost as tall as her father.
 - My car is almost as expensive as your car.

- Our flat is slightly larger than your flat.
- This match is slightly more exciting than the last match.

3 A big difference ... كثيرا من / عن ... **far + صفة مقارنة + than** اختلاف كبير

تستخدم (far ... than) في حالة وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- ex.: - Mariam is far taller than her mother.
- Playing football is far more exciting than watching it.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ يأتي اسم بعد أو بين (the same ... as) :

- He looks exactly the same as his brother.
- She has exactly the same green eyes as her mother.

٢ يأتي بين (as ... as) صفة عادية (وليست صفة مقارنة):

- Omar is as tall as his father. (Not: as taller as)
- Rokaya's story is as interesting as Leen's story.

(Not: as more interesting as)

٣ يأتي بين (slightly / far ... than) صفة مقارنة (وليست صفة عادية):

- Omar is slightly taller than his sister. (Not: slightly tall than)
- Rokaya's story is far more interesting than Aya's story.

(Not: slightly interesting than)

٤ يمكن استخدام (a little / a bit) بدلاً من (slightly) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن وجود

اختلاف بسيط بين طرفين:

- Noha is a bit shorter than Malak.
- My mother is a little younger than my uncle.

٥ لا تُستخدم (very) قبل صفات المقارنة، لكن يمكن استخدام (much / a lot / even) بدلاً

من (far) للتعبير عن وجود اختلاف كبير بين طرفين:

- Mr Hossam is much better than me at tennis. (Not: very better)
- My father is a lot older than my uncle. (Not: very older)

٦ لا تُستخدم (quite) قبل صفات المقارنة إلا في التعبير (quite better) بمعنى (تعافي من مرض

إلى حد ما):

- My grandfather was very ill, but he is quite better now.
- Sama is slightly more intelligent than Hala. (Not: quite more intelligent)

٧ لا تُستخدم (any / no / a bit / a lot) قبل صفات المقارنة التي يتبعها اسم:

- This is a far larger flat than your flat. (Not: a lot larger flat)

٨ هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن تشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة معينة، ومن أهم هذه الطرق:

الطرف الثاني + as + الصفة + as + الطرف الأول

- Rodayna is as tall as Mariam.

- الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الاول -
- Rodayna has the same height as Mariam.
- الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول -
- Rodayna and Mariam have the same height.
- الاسم من الصفة + of the same + be + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول -
- Rodayna and Mariam are of the same height.

٩ لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد او بين (the same + ...+as) من الصفات الآتية:

الاسم Noun	الصفة Adjective	الاسم Noun	الصفة Adjective
length	long	size	big / small
age	old / young	depth	deep
strength	strong	price	expensive/ cheap
width	wide	distance	far / near
		height	high / tall

- This house is as high as yours. = This house is the same height as yours.
- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
- = The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

2 Past Habits

عادات الماضي

Used to + inf. اعتاد أن

١ تستخدم (used to + inf.) بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للتعبير عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن:

.... المصدر + used to + inf. اعتاد أن + الفاعل Subj.

- I used to eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- Omar used to read novels in his free time.

٢ تستخدم (didn't use to + inf.) في حالة النفي:

.... + didn't use to + inf. اعتاد أن + الفاعل Subj.

- I didn't use to eat a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- Omar didn't use to read novels in his free time.
- He never used to listen carefully. كما يمكن استخدام (never used to) للنفي

٣ للسؤال ب «هل» نبدأ ب (Did) ثم الفاعل ثم (use to + inf.):

....? + use to + inf. ثم الفاعل Did + subj.

- Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?
- Did Omar use to read novels in his free time?

❶ السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» تتبع الصيغة التالية:

Q.W. **use to + inf.? + Subj. + did + أداة استفهام**

- What did you use to eat when you were a child?
- Who used to read novels in his free time?

❷ وتُبنى هذه الصيغة للمجهول كالتالي: **used to + be + P.P. + المفعول**

- A lot of sweets used to be eaten by me when I was a child.
- Novels used to be read by Omar in his free time.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ تُعبر (used to + inf.) عن عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي و هذه العادة توقفت ولم تعد تحدث في الحاضر:

- My uncle used to be a heavy smoker. (Now he doesn't smoke.)

❷ تُعبر (used to + inf.) أيضاً عن أشياء كانت مختلفة في الماضي عن الحاضر:

- Tawfik used to work in tourism. Now he has a taxi.

❸ العادة تستمر ويتكرر حدوثها فترة طويلة ، لذلك لا يجوز استخدام تعبيرات زمنية تحصر العادة في مدي زمني قصير مثل:

yesterday / last Friday / last week / this morning etc.

- He used to go to the cinema last week. (x)
- He went to the cinema last week. (✓)

❹ للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان عادياً أو مألوفاً نستخدم:

Subject + was / were + used to + noun / (inf.+ing)

- Amira was used to easy life. Now she is a wife, a mother and a teacher.
- We were used to working on farms.

لاحظ أن (be used to) يمكن أن تأتي بمعنى «يستخدم لكي» بجمل مبنية للمجهول ويليها المصدر:

- Wood is used to make furniture. (Note: used to making)
- Milk is used to make cheese and butter.

❺ للتعبير عن التعود علي عمل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf.+ing)

- Rokaya got used to (living in) her new flat.

❻ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- There used to be / There didn't use to be

- There used to be a cinema in our street. Now it is a big restaurant.
- There didn't use to be an airport in Aswan in 1900.



Check your understanding

❶ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية بدلاً من (used to + inf.) والعكس:

❶ **Subj. + no longer + لم يعد + inf. / (inf.+ s / es / ies)**

- Ali used to smoke. = Ali no longer smokes.

2 Subj. + don't / doesn't + inf. anymore / any longer لم يعد

- Noha used to live in Aswan.

= Noha doesn't live in Aswan any more / any longer.

3 It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf.

- Sherry used to play computer games.

= It was Sherry's habit to play computer games.

4 Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n / (inf. + ing)

- Malik used to go to school by bike.

= Malik was in the habit of going to school by bike.

5 Subj. + S.C. التصريف الثاني as a habit.

- Omnia used to visit her aunt once a week.

= Omnia visited her aunt once a week as a habit.

2 للاحظ استخدام (accustomed) بدلاً من (used) في الصيغة التالية:

- Subject + got / became / grew + used to + noun / (inf.+ing)

= Subject + was / were / got / became + accustomed to + noun / (inf.+ing)

- I got used to working as a teacher.

= I got accustomed to working as a teacher.

2 للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع يمكن ان نستخدم:

Subj. + am/is/are + used to + n./ (inf. + ing).

- I am used to going to school on time.

Advanced Note :

- للاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (used) مع (did / didn't) في حالات الاستفهام والنفي (وهي ليست موضع امتحانات) :

- I didn't use to smoke. = I didn't used to smoke.

- Did you use to smoke ? = Did you used to smoke ?

- What did you use to do ? = What did you used to do ?

Would + inf.

لاحظ أوجه التشابه والاختلاف في استخدام كل من (used to + inf.) و (would + inf.) :

1 تُستخدم كل من (used to + inf.) أو (would + inf.) للتعبير عن العادات المتكررة في الماضي :

- When I was a little girl, I used to cry easily when someone shouted at me.

= When I was a little girl, I would cry easily when someone shouted at me.

2 تُستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف العادات الهامة في الماضي :

- When my uncle was a young man, he used to smoke. (✓)

- When my uncle was a young man, he would smoke. (X)

٢ تُستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف حالة في الماضي - أي لا يمكن استخدام (would + inf.) إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية ، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

- be / have=possess = own / love / like / dislike / enjoy / hate / want / wish / weigh / hear / cost / deserve يستحق / understand / feel ...
- I used to have a small bike when I was a child. (✓)
- I would have a small bike when I was a child. (X)
- When my father was 25, he used to be strong. (✓)
- When my father was 25, he would be strong. (X)

٣ تشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الأفضل أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي :

- Sama used to get up early.
- When she was a student, Sama would get up early.

٤ يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was younger, I always used to help my mother with the housework.
- When I was younger, I used always to help my mother with the housework.

٥ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes ...) بعد (would):

- When I was younger, I would always help my mother with the housework.

General Exercise

On Language

● Apply

• التدريبات التالية مرتبة تصاعدياً حسب مستويات التفكير طبقاً لهرم بلوم.

تنويه

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I used to driving long distance. (امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
 - a. don't
 - b. won't
 - c. am not
 - d. didn't
2. Both Rana and Nada are 168 cm tall. This means
 - a. Rana is slightly taller than Nada
 - b. Rana is almost as tall as Nada
 - c. Rana is exactly the same height as Nada
 - d. a & b
3. Rana is 168 cm while Nada is 167 cm. This means
 - a. Rana is slightly taller than Nada
 - b. Rana is almost as tall as Nada
 - c. Nada is exactly the same height as Rana
 - d. a & b

4. Rana is 168 cm while Nada is 114 cm. This means
 a. Rana is slightly taller than Nada
 b. Rana is almost as tall as Nada
 c. Rana is exactly the same height as Nada
 d. Rana is far taller than Nada
5. The new car is more expensive than the old one.
 a. far b. very c. slightly d. a & c
6. Marwa is almost as as Heba.
 a. old b. older c. oldest d. the oldest
7. Mohammed is far than Ali.
 a. fit b. fitter c. more fit d. most fit
8. Your school is as big as my school.
 a. far b. slightly c. almost d. very
9. Uncle Omar is the same age as my father.
 a. exact b. exactly c. slightly d. far
10. My bag is the same as yours.
 a. big b. small c. a & b d. size
11. My bag is as as yours.
 a. big b. small c. a & b d. size
12. Yara is as as Mai.
 a. age b. old c. young d. b & c
13. Yara is the same as Mai.
 a. age b. old c. young d. b & c
14. The pink blouse and the blue one are price.
 a. exactly b. the same c. far d. almost
15. Omar to get up early.
 a. use b. uses c. is used d. used
16. Ali used for this company.
 a. work b. works c. to work d. work
17. He the poor, but now he helps them a lot.
 a. helps b. helped
 c. used to help d. didn't use to help
18. Sama mum a hand with the housework.
 a. used to give b. uses to give
 c. used to be given d. used to giving
19. Mum a hand with the housework.
 a. used to given b. uses to give
 c. used to be given d. used to giving

20. you with your homework?
 a. Did you use to be helping b. Did Ali use to help
 c. Did Ali use to helping d. Did you use to be helped
21. with your homework?
 a. Did you use to be helping b. Did Ali use to help
 c. Did Ali use to helping d. Did you use to be helped
22. He too much rice and bread. Now, he follows a diet.
 a. eats b. used to eat c. wants to eat d. was eaten
23. Walid a driver. He works as a mechanic at present.
 a. is b. was being c. used to being d. used to be
24. Reham with her mother last summer.
 a. stayed b. was stayed c. stays d. used to stay
25. They life in their luxurious **فخمة** villa. That's why they don't like their small flat.
 a. used to b. used to be c. were used to d. were used for
26. I to my new job as a secretary.
 a. used b. got used c. became used d. b & c
27. used to be a large bookshop on the corner. It is now a clothes shop.
 a. It b. There c. They d. Their
28. Ahmed do exercise regularly. Now, he doesn't.
 a. does b. doesn't c. no longer d. used to
29. Ahmed does exercise regularly.
 a. any longer b. doesn't c. no longer d. used to
30. Ahmed do exercise regularly any more.
 a. does b. doesn't c. no longer d. used to
31. Ahmed do exercise regularly. It is a fixed habit of his.
 a. does b. doesn't c. no longer d. used to
32. She was accustomed up early.
 a. to get b. to getting c. get d. getting
33. Did you to take part in your family discussions?
 a. using b. use c. uses d. b & c
34. When grandpa was very old, he talk to himself for hours.
 a. used b. used to c. would d. b & c
35. When we were children, we go skating every winter.
 a. would b. used to c. a & b d. were used to
36. When I was at primary school, I have a bike.
 a. used b. used to c. would d. b & c
37. Before he retired, he play for Liverpool.
 a. used to b. would c. a & b d. never

• ذاكر القاعدة جيدًا واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

تنويه



Part

I

Vocabulary

تنويه

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Formal	Less formal
arise(from) - arose - ينشأ عن - ينشأ من	come from (phr. v) ينشأ عن - ينشأ من
arisen (phr. v)	
consequently(conj.) بالتالي - لذلك	as a result بالتالي - لذلك
however ومع ذلك - ورغم ذلك	but لكن
in order to لكي	so that لكي
lead to (phr. v) يؤدي إلي - ينتج عنه	result in (phr. v) يؤدي إلي - ينتج عنه
not only ... but also ليس فقط ... لكن أيضاً	... as well as ... بالإضافة إلي ...

تنويه

• من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

benefit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	opportunity(n)	فرصة
career(n)	الحياة المهنية	paid(adj)	مدفوع الأجر
certain(adj)	محدد - مُعَيَّن	pick(ed) up (phr. v)	يلتقط - يتناول
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - عمل خيري	pros (n)	مميزات - مزايا
community(n)	مجتمع - فئة/ طائفة	psychological(adj)	نفسي
conclusion (n)	خاتمة - خلاصة	purpose(n)	غرض
cons (n)	عيوب - مساوئ	related(adj)	مرتبط/ متعلق
contacts(n)	علاقات - اتصالات	repair(ed) (v)	يصلح
contrast(n)	تناقض	reward(ed) (v - n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
costs(n)	تكاليف	run - ran - run (v)	يدير
effect(n)	أثر - تأثير	sign(ed) (n - v)	لافتة - يوقع/ يمضي
enjoyable(adj)	ممتع	skateboard(n)	لوح التزلج
eventually(adv)	في النهاية	skatepark(n)	منتزه للتزلج
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	specific(adj)	محدد
explain(ed) (v)	يوضح - يشرح	suitable(adj)	مناسب
expression(n)	تعبير	sunshade(n)	شسيّة - مظلة
formal(adj)	رسمي	valuable(adj)	قيّم

gain(ed) (v)
inspire(d) (v)
leader(n)
majority(n)
mental health(n)
necessary(adj)

يكتسب - يزداد
يلهم
قائد
الأغلبية
الصحة النفسية
ضروري

visible(adj)
voluntary(adj)
volunteer (n)
volunteer(ed) (v)
volunteering(n)
youth(n)

مرئي
تطوعي
متطوع
يتطوع
العمل التطوعي - التطوع
الشباب

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- 'In order to' is the formal synonym of '.....'.
a. so that b. however c. as a result d. consequently
- "Hard work and time planning lead to success. In a less formal style, we can replace 'lead to' in this sentence with
a. arise from b. exist c. result in d. result from
- "Many health problems come from overweight." In a formal style, '.....' can replace 'come from' in this context.
a. arise from b. look for c. result in d. lead to
- I was very ill., I helped my mother with the housework.
a. Consequently b. However c. As a result d. So that
- The work we do for charities is a good thing for the whole society.
a. involved b. coral c. paid d. voluntary
- Carelessness to so many dangers.
a. makes b. causes c. leads d. arises
- So many dangers from carelessness.
a. make b. cause c. lead d. arise
- "I have so little free time. Consequently, I don't have enough time for fun." In an informal style, we can use '.....' instead of 'consequently'.
a. but b. as a result c. however d. so that

2 Important vocabulary

- "When mum is tired, I volunteer to do the cooking." The word 'volunteer' here is a/an
a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. adjective
- Sleep disorders اضطرابات are sometimes the result of problems.
a. involved b. positive c. psychological d. coral

11. This is a service. It is not free.
a. voluntary b. paid c. positive d. negative
12. In, I can say that protecting biodiversity is very important.
a. conclusion b. conservation c. preservation d. expedition
13. She was dressed in black, which is a colour for funerals.
a. private b. valuable c. suitable d. visible
14. The of students in this class have joined the school trip. You can see only three students in the classroom.
a. contrast b. purpose c. community d. majority
15. The good he has with important people help him a lot.
a. creatures b. contacts c. costs d. pros
16. Eating too much leads to weight.
a. having b. gaining c. fighting d. recycling
17. Finding a good job is the main of joining a language course.
a. contrast b. purpose c. community d. majority
18. Stress الضغط for a long time may affect health badly.
a. well-known b. local c. native d. mental
19. He told me about the pros and of the new plan.
a. advantages b. upsides c. cons d. a & b
20. I a lot from my grandfather's experience.
a. paid b. ran c. benefitted d. fought
21. He was for the great efforts الجهد he has exerted بذلها.
a. inspired b. ensured c. rewarded d. faced
22. The museum contains very antiquities.
a. specific b. valuable c. suitable d. visible
23. Sama doesn't like reading. In, Rodayna is a bookworm.
a. contrast b. purpose c. community d. majority
24. Intelligent people make use of يُحسن استغلال the offered to them.
a. generations b. variety c. creatures d. opportunities
25. The government plans to a new factory to recycle waste from the city.
a. pay b. run c. benefit d. fight
26. Your success has us all. You have showed us that nothing is impossible.
a. inspired b. recycled c. awarded d. faced
27. The teachers' must have a better position in society.
a. contrast b. purpose c. community d. majority
28. "During daytime, the sun makes other stars not to us.
a. specific b. valuable c. suitable d. visible

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلموه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	a specific goal يحقق هدفاً محدداً	go	diving يذهب للغوص
bring	benefits يجلب منافع	have	problems لديه مشكلات
cause	problems يسبب مشكلات	make	useful contacts يقيم علاقات/صداقات مفيدة
cover	the costs يُغطي تكاليف		a rule يضع قاعدة
develop	useful skills يُنمي مهارات مفيدة	offer	... opportunities يتيح لـ ... فرص
	valuable experience يُنمي خبرة قيّمة	prove	extremely useful يُثبت أنه مفيد للغاية
gain	valuable experience يكتسب خبرة قيّمة	provide	the opportunity يمنح الفرصة
give	... the opportunity يُعطي ... الفرصة	reward	volunteers يكافئ المتطوعين
	a reason يعطي سبب	take	turns يتبادل الأدوار
	the result يُعطي النتيجة		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
arise from	يَنبُتُ عن - ينشأ من
consequently	بالتالي - لذلك
pros	مميزات - مزايا
voluntary	تطوعي
	arise out of, come from, come up
	so, that's why, as a result
	advantages, merits, upsides
	unpaid, for free, free of charge

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
arise from	يَنبُتُ عن - ينشأ من	lead to, result in	يؤدي إلى - ينتج عنه
majority	الأغلبية	minority	الأقلية
pros	مميزات - مزايا	cons, disadvantages, demerits, downsides	عيوب - مساوئ
voluntary	تطوعي	paid	مدفوع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

consequently		
consequence (n)	نتيجة / أثر	- Smoking has bad consequences.
consequent (adj)	تابع / ناتج	- Do you realise the consequent effects of this decision ?
consequently (adv)	بالتالي - لذلك	- He is rich. Consequently , he has no financial problems مالية مشكلات.
lead		
lead (v)	يؤدي - يقود	- Smoking leads to health problems.
		- Who leads this group?
leader (n)	قائد	- Who is the leader of this group.
leading (adj)	بارز - قيادي	- My parents have played a leading role in my life.
volunteer		
volunteer (v)	يتطوع	- Sama volunteered to look after the baby.
volunteer (n)	مُتطوع	- Volunteers get no money for their work.
volunteering (n)		- Volunteering plays an important role in society.
	العمل التطوعي - التطوع	
voluntary (adj)	تطوعي	- Voluntary work plays an important role in society.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as I explained above	كما أوضحت أعلاه	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
different to / from	مختلف عن	put ... into contact with	يساعد ... علي التواصل مع
feel good about	يشعر بالرضا عن	put up signs	ضع لافتات
get to know	يعرف بالصدفة	research studies	دراسات بحثية
in conclusion	الخلاصة	take ... on rides	يأخذ ... في جولات
in different languages	بلغات مختلفة	visible places	أماكن مرئية
many reasons why/that	أسباب كثيرة لـ	volunteer job	عمل تطوعي
paid work	عمل بأجر	volunteer programme	برنامج تطوعي
people of any age	الناس من مختلف الأعمار		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arise from	يُنتج عن - ينشأ من	lead to + n / (inf. + ing)	يؤدي إلى - ينتج عنه
benefit from	يستفيد من	pay for	يدفع لمن
download ... from	يُنزل ... من	pick up	يلتقط - يجمع
find out	يكشف - يعرف		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

raise - rise - arise - arouse

- **raise (d) + مفعول** يربي / يجمع مال / يرفع
 - His uncle raises cattle and sheep. يُربي
 - He raised a lot of money abroad. يجمع مال
 - Raise your hand if you want to answer. يرفع
- **rise - rose - risen (بدون مفعول)** يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص / يستيقظ
 - Gold prices have risen. يرتفع
 - The sun rises in the east. تشرق
 - When the teacher entered, all students rose. ينهض
 - I rise at 6.00 in the morning. يستيقظ
- **arise - arose - arisen = come up (بدون مفعول)** ينشأ / ينتج
 - A lot of problems arise because of misunderstanding.
- **arouse - aroused + مفعول** يثير / يوقظ
 - His behaviour aroused the suspicion of the police.
 - Don't arouse the baby.

other than - rather than

- **other than = apart from** بخلاف / غير
 - There are so many sources of protein other than meat.
- **rather than = instead of** بدلاً من
 - I will go to bed early rather than watch this boring film.

award - reward

- **award(ed) (v)** يمنح (جائزة - شهادة ...)
 - Dr Zewail was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1999.
- **award (n)** منحة - جائزة - شهادة
 - Naguib Mahfouz won a lot of awards.
- **reward(ed) (v)** يكافئ
 - The officer rewarded the soldier for his honesty. أمانة
- **reward (n)** مكافأة (مقابل سلوك حسن أو عمل جيد) أو تقديم خدمة
 - My father gives us chocolate as a reward when we do well.

On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 130

14. He is a
 a. volunteer b. voluntary c. volunteering d. volunteered
15. This charity depends on It doesn't pay the people who work there.
 a. volunteer b. voluntary c. volunteering d. volunteered
16. This charity depends on work. It doesn't pay the people who work there.
 a. volunteer b. voluntary c. volunteering d. volunteered
17. She to look after the baby.
 a. volunteer b. voluntary c. volunteering d. volunteered
18. I will join a charity waste my time playing computer games.
 a. rather than b. other than c. apart from d. b & c
19. He was the Nobel Prize.
 a. rewarded b. reward c. award d. awarded

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Problem Solving :

(WB page 16)

The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.



Possible solutions

1. Give sun shades⁽¹⁾ to all the students so that they can stay out of⁽²⁾ the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

Check Vocabulary

(1) شمسية - مظلة

(2) يقي بعيداً عن

Presenter : OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

Manal : I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new **operating system**⁽³⁾. This is a program you can download from the internet. I think this will solve your problem.

Check Vocabulary

نظام تشغيل (3)

Part IV

Language

• راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تلويه

Exercise

On Language

• التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

تلويه

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- When he was five years old, my brother watch all the children's TV programmes.
a. used to b. used c. uses d. use
- Sometimes, my father bring me presents without saying why.
a. used b. used to c. was used to d. b & c
- When I was young, I used to swimming every weekend.
a. had gone b. gone c. go d. went
- In the past, I used to
a. smoked b. smokes c. smoking d. smoke
- When mum was young, she do the housework alone.
a. would b. used to c. a & b d. were used to
- Malak help me with my science homework when I was little.
a. no longer uses b. used to c. was used for d. is used to
- Rokaya is Leen.
a. tall b. height c. taller d. taller than

8. Did he to do anything else as well as writing?
 a. using b. use c. used to d. b & c
9. When I was younger I swimming, but now I really love it!
 a. hadn't enjoyed b. wasn't enjoying
 c. didn't used enjoying d. didn't use to enjoy
10. In the past, people to work long hours.
 a. don't use b. were using c. use d. used
11. to go to bed early when you were young?
 a. Do you used b. Do you use c. Did you use d. Did you using
12. I used to play tennis when I young .
 a. were b. been c. am d. was
13. He used to by his friends' unkind remarks ملاحظات.
 a. annoy b. annoying c. annoys d. be annoyed
14. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Noha is Aya and Leila.
 a. far lighter than b. almost as heavy as
 c. slightly heavier than d. exactly the same weight as
15. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Aya is Leila.
 a. far lighter than b. almost as heavy as
 c. slightly heavier than d. exactly the same weight as
16. Aya is 60 kg. Leila is 60 kg, too. Noha is 59.5 Kg. Aya and Leila are Noha.
 a. far lighter than b. almost as heavy as
 c. slightly heavier than d. exactly the same weight as

2 Special cases

17. Leen is tall, but Rokaya is
 a. tall b. height c. taller d. taller than
18. A month ago, I three weddings.
 a. used to attend b. got used to attend
 c. was used to attend d. attended

19. This spray is used mosquitos.
 a. to kill b. kill c. to killing d. killing
20. He used to his first school after only three days.
 a. get b. is c. became d. become
21. used to be a large villa here.
 a. Those b. Their c. There's d. There
22. I have a/an cheaper car than all my friends.
 a. almost b. bit c. quite d. lot of
23. I to the club every day last week.
 a. used to go b. didn't use to go
 c. went d. had gone
24. This liquid is used perfumes.
 a. to make b. to making c. making d. being made
25. I don't smoke more.
 a. too b. any c. no d. not
26. It was habit to stay up late at night.
 a. Ali b. he c. his d. himself
27. a fixed habit, I used to visit my grandparents once a week before their death.
 a. As b. For c. To d. By
28. This bike and that one have the same
 a. quality b. good c. bad d. b & c
29. Before she got married, she have a lot of free time.
 a. used b. used to c. would d. b & c
30. Cars cost far less money in the past.
 a. would b. would have c. used to d. used to have
31. Whenever I saw her, she be smiling.
 a. used to b. was used to c. would d. would always
32. Youssef is more intelligent than Karim.
 a. very b. far c. much d. b & c

33. Mr Munir smoke and that destroyed his health.
 a. used to b. would c. a & b d. never
34. While I was a secretary, I got used to in my spare time.
 a. wrote b. be written c. writing d. write
35. He eating out as he doesn't enjoy cooking at home.
 a. no longer b. is used for b. was used d. is used to
36. My mother is used to up early every day.
 a. gets b. got c. getting d. get

3 Check your understanding

37. Mr Helmi no longer smokes. To Mr Helmi, smoking is
 a. a habit b. a present habit
 c. a past habit d. a lifelong habit
38. There used to be a cinema in our street. Now,
 a. there's a cinema in our street
 b. we have a cinema in our street
 c. we never had a cinema in our street
 d. we don't have a cinema in our street
39. I used to like koshari. This means
 a. I still like koshari b. I don't like koshari anymore
 c. I never liked koshari d. I didn't like koshari at all
40. Omar is no longer kind to me. He
 a. used to be kind to me b. got used to being kind to me
 c. is getting used to be kind to me d. was never kind to me
41. There didn't use to be a bus stop here. This means
 a. there was a bus stop here b. there is a bus stop here
 c. a bus stop used to be here d. a bus stop never used to be here
42. Sama doesn't hide her father's shoes any longer. What does this mean?
 a. She stopped hiding them. b. She didn't stop hiding them.
 c. She doesn't stop hiding them. d. She still hides them.

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear). بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

reward (ed) (v)	يكافئ	jewel (n)	جوهرة / حجر كريم
flat (adj)	مسطح	war (n)	حرب
edge (n)	حافة	valuable (adj)	قيم / ثمين
duty (n)	واجب	steep (adj)	شديد الانحدار
purse (n)	كيس نقود	alive (adj)	حي
take power	يستولي على السلطة	my blood runs cold	اشعر بالخوف

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- If something is , it is either worth a lot of money or it is very important to someone.
a. terrible b. steep c. valuable d. flat
- The prince didn't want to wait until his father died to become king, so he decided to power for himself.
a. make b. take c. have d. do
- If you are at the furthest point of something, you are on the
a. plate b. jewel c. sand d. edge
- Areas that don't have any hills are
a. flat b. steep c. high d. cliffs
- When a sight or a sound frightens you, your blood runs
a. high b. up c. away d. cold

6. A is a shiny stone that is often used in necklaces or bracelets.
a. cure b. cliff c. jewel d. rule
7. When you are trying to make someone well again when they have an illness, you are trying to find a/an
a. purse b. cure c. occasion d. event
8. When a hill is rising or falling at a sharp angle, it's
a. strange b. edge c. flat d. steep
9. Leila's mother always keeps her money in a red leather
a. purse b. cure c. jewel d. voice
10. A long time ago, there were many between France and England, but the countries are good neighbours now.
a. plates b. jewels c. sand d. wars

Part II

Grammatical Hints

Linking Words and Expressions: Formal & Informal

استخدام الروابط والتعبيرات في اللغة الرسمية واللغة الدارجة

التناقض Contrast

Formal → However جملة+ومع ذلك / لكن

- I was angry. However, I didn't say anything wrong.

Informal → but جملة+ومع ذلك / لكن

- I was angry but I didn't say anything wrong.

النتيجة Result

Formal → Consequently جملة+ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

- The flat is in a noisy street. Consequently, I won't buy it.

Informal → As a result جملة+ولذلك / ونتيجة لذلك

- The flat is in a noisy street. As a result, I won't buy it.

الغرض Purpose

Formal → to – in order to – so as to لكي + inf. ...

- We get up early to catch the school bus.
- Ahmed will help me so as to solve my problems.
- Sama studies hard in order to pass the exam.

Informal → So that - in order that - in the hope that جملة + لكي / حتى

لاحظ أن الفعل في الجملة بعد (so that - in order that - in the hope that) يكون كالتالي:

- ١- في المضارع أو المستقبل نستخدم (can / will / may / might + inf.):
 - We get up early so that we can catch the school bus.
 - Ahmed will help me in order that I will be able to solve my problems.
- ٢- في الماضي نستخدم (could / would / might + inf.):
 - Sama studied hard in the hope that she could pass the exam.

ليس فقط ... لكن أيضا not only ... but also

١. تأتي (not only) قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى:
 - ... (also) (الفاعل) but + فعل ..., not only + فاعل -
 - We did not only go to the market, but we also went to the zoo.
٢. يمكن أن تأتي (also) بعد (but) مباشرة:
 - We did not only go to the market, but also we went to the zoo.
٣. يمكن استخدام (as well) في نهاية الجملة بمعنى أيضاً بدلاً من (also):
 - We not only went to the garden, but we went to the zoo as well.
٤. لا تستخدم (do- does- did) بعد الفاعل بين (but.... also):
 - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
 - = She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.
٥. عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة لابد أن يُستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:
 - Not only + فاعل + فعل مساعد + فعل ..., but.....
 - Not only did we go to the market, but we also went to the zoo.
٦. إذا ربطت (Not only... but also) فاعلين مختلفين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني من ناحية المفرد والجمع:
 - Not only Tom but also his brothers are doctors.

ينشأ من - come from - arise from

Formal → arise from + n / (inf. + ing)

- A lot of health problems arise from gaining weight.

Informal → come from + n / (inf. + ing)

- A lot of health problems come from gaining weight.

لاحظ : يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين (arise from / come from) و (inf. + ing)
 - Most social problems arise from people not getting a good education.

يؤدي إلى - result in - lead to

Formal → lead to + n / (inf. + ing)

- Pollution leads to suffering from health problems.

Informal → result in + n / (inf. + ing)

- Pollution results in suffering from health problems.

لاحظ : يمكن أن يأتي المفعول بين (lead to / result in) و (inf. + ing)
 - Voluntary work can eventually lead to a volunteer getting a good job.

Exercise

On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "....." show a contrast between this sentence and the sentence before it.
 - Not only ... but also
 - However
 - In order to
 - Consequently
- "....." says that two related things are true or happened .
 - Not only ... but also
 - However
 - In order to
 - Consequently
- "....." gives the results of something that happens.
 - Not only ... but also
 - However
 - In order to
 - Consequently

4. "....." talk(s) about the purpose of something.
 a. So that b. However c. In order to d. a & c
5. She got up late,, the train was late too and she managed to catch it.
 a. but b. however c. although d. a & b
6. He doesn't learn from his mistakes., the manager fired him.
 a. As a result b. To c. In order that d. Not only
7. He has played well, but he has also scored two goals.
 a. as a result b. to c. in order that d. not only
8. He looks for a second job earn more money.
 a. as a result b. to c. in order that d. not only
9. He looks for a second job he can earn more money.
 a. as a result b. to c. in order that d. not only
10. I offered to reduce the price., the customer refused to buy the jacket.
 a. Consequently b. However c. So that d. In order to
11. I offered to reduce the price., the customer agreed to buy the jacket.
 a. Consequently b. However c. So that d. In order to
12. I offered to reduce the price make the customer buy the jacket.
 a. consequently b. however c. so that d. in order to
13. I offered to reduce the price the customer might buy the jacket.
 a. consequently b. however c. so that d. in order to
14. Not only well as a coach, but he is also a good team manager.
 a. he does b. does he do c. he doesn't d. doesn't he do
15. Not only my two aunts but my uncle also to help me.
 a. offers b. offer c. to offer d. offering
16. Car accidents usually arise from careless drivers very fast.
 a. drive b. drives c. driving d. to drive
17. Eating too much leads on much weight.
 a. put b. puts c. to put d. to putting

Part III

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing

كتابة المقال

Model essay

Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY words (180)** on :

How can volunteers benefit from volunteering

Volunteering is one of the most important duties واجبات that young people can have. The benefits of volunteering can be enormous. Volunteering offers necessary help to people in need. The benefits of volunteering can be even greater for volunteers themselves. So, how can volunteers benefit from volunteering?

One of the best benefits of volunteering is the impact أثر on the community. Unpaid work helps in enhancing services in community. Volunteering allows you to connect to your community and make it a better place. Dedicating تكريس your time as a volunteer helps you make new friends and improve your social skills.

There are a lot of volunteering opportunities you can choose from according to your free time. Other than charity organizations, you can serve in worship places أماكن العبادة such as mosques and churches. Senior centers are always need volunteers to accompany the elders to go for short walks or talk to them.

Volunteering is good for your health at any age. Studies have found that those who volunteer have a lower mortality rate معدل وفيات than those who do not. Volunteering has also been shown to lessen يقلل symptoms أعراض of heart disease.

To conclude, volunteering is a two-way street: It can benefit you and your family as well as the community.

2 Translation الترجمة

① Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Trees are important as they purify the air by giving off oxygen by day. They give us shade and the green colour that makes us feel at ease.

أ. الأشجار مهمة لأنها تنقي الهواء عن طريق إعطاء الأكسجين نهاراً. إنها تمنحنا الظل واللون الأخضر الذي يجعلنا نشعر بالراحة.

ب. الأشجار مهمة لأنها تنقي الهواء عن طريق إعطاء الأكسجين للنهار. إنها تمنحنا الظل واللون الأخضر الذي يجعلنا نشعر بالراحة.

ج. الأشجار مهمة لأنها تنقي الهواء عن طريق امتصاص الأكسجين في النهار. إنها تمنحنا الظل واللون الأخضر الذي يجعلنا نشعر بالراحة.

د. الأشجار مهمة لأنها تنقي الهواء عن طريق إعطاء الأكسجين في النهار. إنها تمنحنا الظل واللون الأخضر الذي يجعلنا نشعر بالراحة.

2. Man is the most dangerous enemy of mankind. Life on earth is in great danger because of the damage man has done to the environment.

أ. الإنسان هو أخطر عدو لنوعية الإنسان. الحياة على الأرض في خطر كبير وذلك للضرر الذي سببه الإنسان بالبيئة.

ب. الإنسان هو أخطر عدو للبشر. الحياة على الأرض في خندق كبير وذلك للضرر الذي سببه الإنسان بالبيئة.

ج. الإنسان هو أخطر عدو للبشرية. الحياة على الأرض في خطر كبير وذلك للضرر الذي أهداه الإنسان بالبيئة.

د. الإنسان هو أخطر عدو للبشرية. الحياة على الأرض في خطر كبير وذلك للضرر الذي سببه الإنسان بالبيئة.

• ② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يعتبر الاحتباس الحراري من أشد المخاطر التي تهدد البيئة التي نعيش فيها، فزيادة ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الجو تؤدي إلى ارتفاع درجات الحرارة.

- a. Global warming is one of the more serious threats to the environment in where we live, as an increase in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere leads to a rise in temperatures.
- b. Global warming is one of the most serious threats to the environment where we live, as an increase in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere leads to a rise in temperatures.
- c. Global warming is one of the most series threats to the environment where we live, as an increase in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere leads to a rise in temperatures.
- d. Global warming is one of the most serious threats to the environment where we live, as a decrease in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere leads to a rise in temperatures.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للمتقدمين فقط

• هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

تنويه

challenge

• **challenge (n)**

تَحْدِي

- Passing the final exam is a real challenge. I must study hard.

• **challenge(d) (v)**

يتحدى

- Don't try to challenge him at chess. He is very intelligent.

• **challenging (adj)**

ينطوي علي تحدي / صعب لكن مشير

- I am sure you will enjoy this challenging job.

• **unchallenged (adj)**

مقبول - متعارف عليه - مُتَّفَق عليه

- He is a wise **unchallenged** person whose opinions are usually **unchallenged**.

• **unchallengeable (adj)**

مُطْلَق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل للنقاش

- We have **unchallengeable** love for our homeland.

لاحظ استخدام الصفة (**challenged**) عند الحديث عن ذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة بمعنى (ذو إعاقة):

visually challenged - physically challenged - mentally challenged

- Braille is a special writing for people who are **visually challenged**.

= Braille is a special writing for **blind people**.

conserve

• **conserve (d) = preserve(d) (v)**

يحفظ / يصون / يحمي

- It is very important to **conserve** the natural environment.

• **conserve (d) (v)**

يرشد / يقتصد في

- We must **conserve** water.

• **conserve = jam (n)**

مربي

- She had a **conserve** sandwich for breakfast.

• **conservation = preservation (n)**

حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)

- The **conservation** of biodiversity is a must. ضرورة

• **conservation (n)**

ترشيد / تقليل

- **Energy conservation** is something important.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- nature conservation

حماية الطبيعة

- wildlife conservation

حماية الحياة البرية

- conservation groups

جماعات حماية الطبيعة

• **conservationist (n)**

شخص محافظ علي أو صديق للبيئة

- **Conservationists** are people who work hard to protect the environment.

species

• **species (n)**

نوع - أنواع (يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المقصود)

- This **species** of animals is rare.

- These **species** of animals are rare.

ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- endangered species

نوع نادر (مهدد بالانقراض)

- protected species

نوع محمي (في محمية طبيعية)

- extinct species

نوع منقرض

unique

• **unique (adj)**

فريد من نوعه

- Coral reefs have **unique** beauty.

• unique (adj)

مُمَيِّز / خاص

- They spent a **unique** time in the Maldives. جُزِر المالديف.
- This scene is more **unique** than that one. (X) لاحظ: لا تُستخدم الصفة (**unique**) في صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل:

لاحظ التعبير التالي:

• be unique to

يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في

- This type of fish is **unique to** the Red Sea. It exists nowhere else.

volunteer

• volunteer (n)

شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)

- A team of **volunteers** are helping to keep the natural environment clean.

• volunteer(ed) (to / for) (v)

يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر

- He **volunteered** for looking after the plants in the garden.

• volunteering (n)

التطوع (القيام بعمل دون أجر)

- **Volunteering** benefits both societies and volunteers themselves.

• voluntary (adj)

تطوعي (دون أجر)

- Omar did some **voluntary** work for a charity.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ▶

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mr Omar his services as a lawyer for the victims.
a. volunteered b. arouse c. lead d. preserved
- The so many ancient tourist sites is unique Luxor and Aswan.
a. for b. from c. to d. with
- The deaf, the blind and the dumb are examples of people who are
a. challenge b. challenged c. challenging d. unchallenged
- The price of this jacket can't go ; it is too expensive.
a. challenge b. challenged c. challenging d. unchallenged
- The lion is a /an species of animals. That is, it is about to die out.
a. dangerous b. endangered c. a & b d. conservative

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- بعد (Did he...) لابد من استخدام فعل في المصدر، ولا يمكن استخدام (use) قبل (to eating)
2.	c	- الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولي هو (have) وهو ما يتم نفيه في الصيغة المختصرة في المضارع بـ (doesn't)
3.	c	- نستخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (no longer) لنفي عادة عن المضارع
4.	a	- الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولي هو (is) وهو ما يتم نفيه في الصيغة المختصرة في الماضي بـ (wasn't)
5.	a	- وجود (any more) يتطلب إجابة منفية واستخدام الماضي هنا لا يعطي معني مفيد

1. Did he to eating yoghurt?
a. got used b. become used c. use d. using
2. Roaa used to have short hair, but now she
a. couldn't b. wasn't c. doesn't d. isn't
3. She no longer glasses, but she used to do that when she was young.
a. wore b. is wearing c. wears d. wear
4. He is used to playing tennis every weekend, but many years ago he
a. wasn't b. didn't c. doesn't d. isn't
5. She here any more.
a. doesn't work b. didn't work c. is used to working d. used to work
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Advanced Exercise on Language

التمرين المتقدم : الاختيار الصحيحة من الإجابة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعل (volunteer) هنا يعني (يتبرع/ يتطوع بـ)
2.	c	- التعبير (be unique to) يعني (تتفرد به/ تتميز به)
3.	b	- الصفة (challenged) هنا تعني (مُعاق)
4.	d	- الفعل (can't go unchallenged) هنا يعني (لا يمكن قبوله أو التسليم به)
5.	b	- الصفة (endangered) وليس (dangerous) هي الاختيار الصحيح لأن المعني المقصود في الجملة أن الأسود مُعرضة لخطر الانقراض

Test on Unit 9

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most problems ignorance الجهل.
a. arise from b. come from c. pick up d. a & b
2. The baby is in need of someone to it.
a. look after b. care c. take care d. lead to
3. "Each system has its pros and cons." Which of the following is antonym of 'pros'?
a. merits b. demerits c. upsides d. advantages
4. When a job makes you happy and satisfied, we say it is a job.
a. suitable b. specific c. challenging d. rewarding
5. Moving from Aswan to Cairo has caused changes to my life.
a. involved b. significant c. physical d. coral
6. It is very important to in touch with your old friends.
a. make b. keep c. save d. conserve
7. When my grandfather was young, he a footballer.
a. used to be b. would be c. was been d. was being
8. When she was young, sheto like going to bed early.
a. didn't to use b. isn't used c. doesn't use d. used
9. My sister likes going to bed early now. When she was little, she go to bed late.
a. was using b. no longer c. used to d. is used
10. Delicious meals in that place.
a. served b. used to serve
c. used to be served d. was used to serving
11. Aya is 60 kgs. Leila is 60 kgs, too. Rodayna is 25 kgs. Rodayna is Aya and Leila.
a. far lighter than b. almost as heavy as
c. slightly heavier than d. exactly the same weight as
12. Rokaya and Leen are of the same
a. tall b. height c. taller d. taller than
13. Mr Mohammed likes watching violence films. He violence films.
a. get used to watching b. is used to watching
c. doesn't use to watch d. used to watch
14. Malak used to wear glasses but now she
a. didn't b. isn't c. doesn't d. does
15. He smokes.
a. any more b. any longer c. no longer d. doesn't use

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

No matter how much we strive to make our domestic environment as safe as possible, accidents at home can still happen - even in the most carefulness of households. When it comes to the health of our families, especially for those with young children, it makes sense to know exactly what to do if these common scenarios do occur.

An example of the most common accidents that can happen in the home is falling objects. When children start to move around on their own, there is an increased danger of them pulling objects down on top of themselves. Being conscious of your kid's health means making sure any trailing electrical leads, table cloth edges and dish towels are out of reach in order to help prevent accidents happening.

Another example is trips and falls. A fall can affect people of all ages, but they are most common among the very young and the very old. Often, falling over as a child will only hurt their pride and a few soothing words is all what's needed. However, if the person who has fallen subsequently becomes **drowsy**, vomits or loses consciousness, it is important to seek medical advice.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The word "**drowsy**" is the opposite of the word
a. alert b. intelligent c. sleepy d. fainting
2. What is the main idea of the last paragraph?
a. What happened when a person falls ?
b. What happened when a person goes on a trip ?
c. Trips and falls are examples of home accidents.
d. The danger of falling and how to react to it.
3. The word in the second paragraph can be replaced by the word "alone".
a. on their own b. conscious c. dish towels d. accidents
4. are likely to have more accidents at home.
a. Parents b. Children c. Babies d. Adults
5. Which of the following is the best title for the passage ?
a. How to double home accidents. b. How to help stop home accidents.
c. The effects of home accidents. d. How to stop children falling.
6. Our houses are now in the past.
a. safer than b. as safe as
c. more dangerous than d. as dangerous as

7. can be one of the dangerous accidents that may occur at home.

- a. Sleeping b. Falling c. Training d. Planting

8. We should give advice for people in emergency.

- a. medical b. educational c. economical d. social

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

To protect people from the danger of floods, we can build flood barriers to help stop flooding. Floods happen when there is too much rain.

- أ. لحماية الناس من خطر الفيضانات ، يمكننا بناء حواجز للفيضانات للمساعدة في زيادة الفيضانات.
تحدث الفيضانات عندما يكون هناك كثير من المطر.
ب. لكي نحمي الناس من خطر الفيضانات ، يمكننا بناء حواجز للفيضانات للمساعدة في وقف الفيضانات.
تحدث الفيضانات عندما يكون هناك كثير من المطر.
ج. لكي نحمي الناس من خطر الفيضانات ، يمكننا بناء سدود للفيضانات للمساعدة في وقف الفيضانات.
تحدث الفيضانات عندما يكون هناك القليل من المطر.
د. لحماية الناس من خطر الفيضانات ، يمكننا بناء مصدات للفيضانات للمساعدة في حجز الفيضانات.
قد تحدث الفيضانات عندما يكون هناك الكثير من المطر.

4 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

من المؤكد أن الأرض تنتج من الغذاء ما يكفي لإطعام جميع الناس، لكن المشكلة ناتجة عن التوزيع غير العادل للمواد الغذائية على سكان الأرض.

- a. It is certain that the earth produces enough food to feed all people, but the problem arises from the unfair distribution of foodstuffs among the inhabitants of the earth.
b. It is certain that the earth produced enough food to feed all people, but the problem arises from the unfair distribution of foodstuffs among the inhabitants of the earth.
c. It is certain that the earth produces enough food to feed all people, but the problem arises from the unfair distribution of foodstuffs among the inhabitants of the earth.
d. It is certain that the earth produces enough food to feed all people, but the problem raises from the unfair distribution of food produce among the inhabitants of the earth.

5 Write an essay of about 180 words on :

‘All young people should volunteer in their holidays.’

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

تنويه

UNIT 10

The news

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 24 : 29

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ❖ **Reading :**
Online news stories
- ❖ **Writing :**
A news report
- ❖ **Listening :**
News stories
- ❖ **Speaking :**
- Presenting news stories

- ❖ **Language :**
Past perfect and past perfect passive
- ❖ **Life skills :**
Critical thinking : recognising facts and opinions ; Self-management : weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions



- بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
- **Dictation** في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

النقطة
الوحدة



Part I

Vocabulary

• **تنويه** لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (اولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

broadcast -	يذيع - إذاعة	journalist(n)	صحفي
broadcast (v - n)		matter(ed) (v)	يهم - يحدث تأثيراً
channel(n)	قناة - قنال	news channel	قناة إخبارية
correspondent(n)	مراسل	newsreader(n)	قارئ الأخبار
deliberately (adv)	عمداً / عن قصد	photographer(n)	مصور فوتوغرافي
digital nomad(n)	رحالة رقمي	programme(n)	برنامج
editor(n)	رئيس التحرير	question(ed) (v)	يتشكك في - يتحقق
fact checker(n)	مُتَقَصِّي حقائق	reporter(n)	مراسل - صحفي
foreign	مراسل أجنبي	scene(n)	مشهد - مكان
correspondent		search engine	مُحرك البحث
headline(n)	عنوان رئيسي (مانشيت)	source (n)	مصدر
interview(ed) (v)	يُحاور - يُجرى مقابلة		
investigator(n)	مُحقق		

• **تنويه** من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accurate(adj)	دقيق	on board (adj - adv)	علي متن
admit(ted) (v)	يُقر بـ - يعترف بأن	origin(n)	أصل - منشأ
alarm(n)	انذار - تنبيه	originally(adv)	أصلاً - في الأساس
bomb(n)	قنبلة	perfect(adj)	تام - نموذجي
clear(adj)	واضح	photography(n)	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
confirm(ed) (v)	يؤكد / يثبت / يُبرهن	point of view	وجهة نظر
crash(ed) (v)	يصطدم	politician(n)	شخص سياسي
digital(adj)	رقمي	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي
disaster(n)	كارثة	print(ed) (v)	يطبع

discovery(n)	اكتشاف	printing press(n)	الصحافة المطبوعة
fake(adj)	مُزَيَّف - كاذب	professional(adj)	مُحترف
fear(ed) (v - n)	يُخشى / يخاف -	properly(adj)	بشكل مناسب
	الخوف	range(n)	سلسلة
find(n)	اكتشاف	record(ed) (v - n)	يُسجَل - سِجِل
firefighter(n)	رجل مطافي	responsible(adj)	مسئول
fix(ed) (v)	يُصلَح - يثبت	select(ed) (v)	يختار - ينتقي
flame(n)	اللهب	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
frequently(adv)	كثيراً	story(n)	خبر - قصة
hold - held (v)	يتبني - يؤمن به	talent(n)	موهبة
identity (n)	هوية - شخصية	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
income(n)	دَخل	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق به - الثقة
inform(ed) (v)	يُبلِّغ - يُعلم	truth(n)	الحقيقة - الصدق
injury(n)	إصابة	unclear(adj)	غير واضح
Lebanese(adj)	لبناني	unreliable(adj)	غير موثوق به
meteorite(n)	نيزك	zoom(ed) in (v)	يُكَبِّرُ الصورة
news stories	موضوعات الأخبار		

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلُّم المُستهدفة - هام جداً.

تنويه

3

تعريفات Definitions

Memorise	Understand
broadcast (v) يذيع	to send out a programme on TV or radio
digital nomad رحالة رقمي	a person who uses telecommunication technologies to earn a living يحقق دخلاً
editor(n) رَئِيسُ التَّحْرِيرِ	a person who is in charge of مسئول عن a newspaper or magazine
foreign correspondent مراسل أجنبي	a person who finds a news story in a different country
headline(n) عنوان رئيسي	the titles عناوين of news stories
interview (v) يُحاوِر - يُجرِي مقابلة	to ask someone questions
investigator(n) مُحَقِّق	a person who tries to discover the facts of what happened

journalist(n)	صحفي	a person who finds a news story and tells the public
news channel	قناة إخبارية	a television station محطة تلفزيونية where you can see news programmes
newsreader(n)	قارئ الأخبار	someone who reads reports on a TV news programme
photographer(n)	مصور فوتوغرافي	a person who takes photographs, as a job or hobby
reporter(n)	مراسل	a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV
scene(n)	مشهد - مكان	a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime جريمة
search engine	مُحرك البحث	a computer programme that searches the internet for information
sense(n)	معنى - مَغزى	something that people can understand
source (n)	مصدر	the place something comes from or starts at

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- It does not to me whether he apologises or not. I have forgiven him سامحته.
a. correspond b. matter c. search d. broadcast
- The of articles, news stories are written in a special way so that they attract readers.
a. sources b. senses c. scenes d. headlines
- Journalists usually keep their secret.
a. nonsense b. battles c. sources d. stages
- A must be honest in reporting pieces of news.
a. journalist b. judge c. digital nomad d. photographer
- Some are not fair. They show only negative news.
a. battles b. news channels c. drummers d. stages

6. We do not our parents' advice as we are sure they love us.
a. bury b. tempt c. question d. erect
7. You need to follow this fitness patiently if you want to lose weight.
a. find b. programme c. search engine d. necropolis
8. It is the role of a / an to check everything that will be published in his or her newspaper.
a. correspondent b. investigator c. prisoner d. editor
9. A has to pass strict language tests.
a. newsreader b. news channel c. newspaper d. a & c
10. I think Google is the best ever.
a. find b. cemetery c. search engine d. necropolis
11. The police stopped people from approaching من الاقتراب the crime
a. source b. sense c. scene d. headline
12. As a , I work hard to find news that interest my readers.
a. channel b. website c. report d. reporter
13. Football matches are live on TV.
a. broadcast b. recognised c. crept d. interviewed
14. This experienced was able to find out who the criminal was.
a. correspondent b. investigator c. prisoner d. editor
15. make a lot of money from online business.
a. Journalists b. Judges c. Digital nomads d. Photographers
16. It is the job of a fact to examine the facts in the reports before they are sent to the editor.
a. reader b. correspondent c. reporter d. checker
17. A TV has to speak at least two foreign languages.
a. correspondent b. investigator c. prisoner d. nomad
18. A: You broke my glasses!
B: I'm really sorry but it was all by mistake.
a. reliably b. remarkably c. deliberately d. digitally
19. I was for the job of tour guide, and I'm waiting for them to call me.
a. broadcast b. recognised c. crept d. interviewed

20. As a professional, he knows all about modern digital cameras.
 a. journalist b. judge c. digital nomad d. photographer

2 Important vocabulary

21. This COVID-19 vaccine **مصل** is one of the most important in the last ten years.
 a. finds b. programmes c. search engines d. necropolis
22. It is said that the satellite was destroyed when a hit it.
 a. tone b. meteorite c. speed d. spacewalk
23. Every footballer dreams of being for the national team.
 a. tempted b. created c. selected d. feared
24. This application makes it easy to images in or out.
 a. launch b. zoom c. hold d. matter
25. The word "Algebra" is Arabic in
 a. remains b. barrier c. origin d. sense
26. Many well-known doctors attended the medical
 a. spacewalk b. conference c. permission d. point of view
27. Titles of news are written in a way that attracts readers' attention.
 a. routes b. addresses c. stories d. conferences
28. The doctor asked me to do some tests to the diagnosis **التشخيص**.
 a. confirm b. create c. select d. fear
29. It is polite to respect other people's
 a. spacewalk b. conference c. permission d. point of view
30. My sister always the same opinions as me.
 a. launches b. zooms c. holds d. matters
31. I that I might not have enough time to help you.
 a. sorry b. create c. select d. fear
32. Natural like earthquakes can't be predicted.
 a. spokespeople b. checkers c. disasters d. foreigners

3 Definitions

33. A is an area of land where dead people are buried, especially a large ancient one.
 a. find b. programme c. search engine d. necropolis

34. A is a computer programme that searches the internet for information.
a. search engine b. news channel
c. foreign correspondent d. digital nomad
35. A / An is the place something comes from or starts at.
a. source b. sense c. interview d. battle
36. A is the titles of a news story.
a. stage b. scene c. headline d. drum
37. A / An is someone who reads reports on a TV news programme.
a. newsreader b. investigator c. journalist d. reporter
38. A / An is a person who collects and tells the news for newspapers, radio or TV.
a. editor b. investigator c. journalist d. reporter
39. A / An is a person who finds a news story and tells the public.
a. editor b. investigator c. journalist d. reporter
40. To is to ask someone questions.
a. broadcast b. creep up c. interview d. edit
41. A is a person who finds a news story in a different country.
a. search engine b. news channel
c. foreign correspondent d. digital nomad
42. A is a television station where you can see news programmes.
a. search engine b. news channel
c. foreign correspondent d. digital nomad
43. To is to send out a programme on TV or radio.
a. broadcast b. creep up c. interview d. edit
44. A / An is a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine.
a. editor b. investigator c. journalist d. reporter

Part II Vocabulary Study

تأويه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

call	the police يتصل بالشرطة	hold	an opinion / a point of view يتبنى وجهة نظر
cause	serious problems يُسبب مشكلة خطيرة	make	a discovery يكتشف
	an accident يتسبب في حادث		a video يُعد فيديو
check	the facts يوثق الحقائق	offer	the chance يمنح الفرصة
come	true يتحقق	present	a news report يُقدم تقرير إخباري
create	a search engine يُصمم محرك بحث	produce	a news report يُعد تقرير إخباري
	a news website ينشئ موقعاً إخبارياً	score	a goal يُحرز هدف
discover	the facts يكتشف الحقائق	share	opinions يتفق في الرأي
have	a special talent لديه موهبة خاصة	take	a photograph يلتقط صورة
	the chance لديه الفرصة		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
deliberately عمدًا / عن قصد	intentionally, on purpose, purposefully
question يتشكك - يتحقق من مصداقية	doubt, raise doubts about, suspect
confirm يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن	verify, authenticate
confirm يعترف	assert
foreign أجنبي	alien, non-native

foreign	غير معروف - غير مألوف	unfamiliar, unknown, strange
foreign	غير ملائم	irrelevant, inappropriate
investigate	يُحقق - يتقصي	look into, detect

3 المتضادات Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
deliberately	عمداً / عن قصد	by mistake, accidentally	بالصدفة
confirm	يؤكد / يثبت / يبرهن	refute, rebut	يدحض
confirm	يعترف	deny, refute, rebut, disprove	ينكر - يدحض
foreign	أجنبي	domestic	محلي
foreign	غير معروف - غير مألوف	familiar	مألوف - معروف
foreign	غير ملائم	relevant	ملائم
zoom in	يُكَبِّرُ الصورة	zoom out	يُصَغِّرُ الصورة

4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

broadcast		
broadcast (v)	يذيع	- The match is broadcast on this channel.
broadcast (n)	إذاعة	- There's a live broadcast of the conference.
broadcaster (n)	مذيع	- He is a well-known radio broadcaster.
broadcasting (n)	المجال الإذاعي	- My brother has a job in broadcasting.
correspondent		
correspond (v)	يُرسل	- We correspond regularly.
correspondent (n)	مُرسل	- She works as a correspondent for a news channel.
correspondence (n)	المراسلة - التناغم	- Correspondence is one of the secretary's duties.

editor		
edit (v)	يُعدّل - يحرر	- I had to edit the essay.
edition (n)	طبعة - نسخة	- The second edition of the book has come out today.
editor (n)	رئيس التحرير	- The editor refused to publish my article.
find		
find (v)	يجد	- I found a good clothes shop in the city centre.
find (n)	اكتشاف	- This medicine for virus C is a find.
findings (n)	نتائج	- The findings of the research surprised us.
interview		
interview (v)	يُحاوَر - يُجرى مقابلة	- The HR is interviewing some applicants tomorrow.
interview (n)	مقابلة - حوار	- I have a job interview today.
interviewee (n)	المُحاوَر - الضيف	- The interviewee didn't expect to get the job.
interviewer (n)	مُحاوَر - مُجرى المقابلة	- The interviewer liked my CV.
investigator		
investigate (v)	يُحقّق - يستجوب	- The police are investigating the crime.
investigation (n)	تحقيق - تَقْصِي	- The investigations have continued for two weeks.
investigator (n)	مُحقّق	- The investigators have found important evidence. أدلة
journalist		
journal (n)	صحيفة - مفكرة يوميات	- He is a reporter for a famous journal.
journalism (n)	الصحافة	- He works in journalism.
journalist (n)	صحفي	- He is a journalist.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a dream start	بداية رائعة	national team	المنتخب الوطني
a wider range of	مجال أوسع من	news stories	موضوعات إخبارية
be chosen for	يتم اختياره لـ	press conference	مؤتمر صحفي
for the day	لمدة يوم واحد - اليوم	question what we read	نتحقق من مصداقية ما نقرأ
gaming record	سجل الألعاب	suffer an injury	يشكو من إصابة
in charge of	مسئول عن	top scorer	هداف
main income	الدخل الرئيسي	what appeared	شيء يبدو وكأنه طائرة
NASA = National Aeronautics and Space Administration	وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية	to be a plane	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

accept ... as	يقبل بـ ... كـ	send ... out	ينبعث منه ... - يُطلق ...
care about	يهتم بـ	share ... with	يحكي عن ... لـ - يشارك ... مع
hear of/about	يسمع عن - يعرف	stay up	يسهر
crash into	يصطدم بـ	turn to	يتحول إلي - يغيّر إلي
look for	يبحث عن	upload ... to	يرفع ... علي
look into	يُحقق في	zoom in	يكبّر الصورة
play for	يلعب لـ		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

channel - canal

• channel (n)

قناة (تلفزيونية)

- There is an exciting film being shown on **channel** 2 now.

• canal / channel (n)

قناة (مجري مائي)

- The Suez Canal is very important to both Egypt and the whole world.
- This irrigation **channel** carries water to our fields.

لاحظ أن تعني (canal) قناة صناعية يحفرها الإنسان بينما (channel) تعني قناة مائية طبيعية.

nomad - digital nomad

- **nomad (n)** بدوي (ينتمي لقبيلة من البدو الرحل الذين ينتقلون من مكان لآخر لرعي حيواناتهم)
- In the past, most Arab tribes القبائل were **nomads**.
- **digital nomad (n)** رحالة رقمي (شخص يعمل من منزله لجهات مختلفة علي الإنترنت)
- He earns a lot of money as a digital **nomad**.

headline - title - address

- **headline (n)** عنوان رئيسي (التقرير اخباري أو موضوع في صحيفة)
- Salah's news always make the **headlines**.
- **title (n)** عنوان (كتاب - مسرحية - رواية / مقال ...)
- I nearly know all the **titles** of Naguib Mahfouz's works.
- **title (n)** لقب (شخص)
- 'Sir', 'Mr', 'Dr' and 'Professor' are all **titles**.
- **title (n)** مُسمّي الوظيفة
- The **title** of a person who examines patients is 'Dr'.
- **address (n)** عنوان (مكان المعيشة / العمل)
- I don't know your new **address**.
- **address (n)** عنوان (الكروني)
- I sent him the **address** of my new website.

photographer - painter

- **photographer (n)** مصور فوتوغرافي (يلتقط صور بالكاميرا)
- As a **photographer**, you need a high-tech digital camera.
- **painter = artist (n)** رسام / فنان - نقاش
- I want to become a famous **painter**.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Sama holds exactly the same as Nada.
a. opinion b. accident c. point of view d. a & c
2. To 'investigate' is a synonym of to '.....'.
a. navigate b. innovate c. admit d. look into
3. To 'confirm' is antonymous with to '.....'.
a. deny b. verify c. authenticate d. assert

4. When you question something, this means you it.
 a. verify b. doubt c. ask d. certify
5. I haven't heard this player before. What club does he play for?
 a. from b. of c. about d. b & c
6. Ayman and I the same opinions.
 a. have b. share c. play d. a & b
7. I hope that all my hopes will true one day.
 a. have b. share c. play d. come
8. "I need to do some tests to confirm my diagnosis التشخيص." In this context, the verb 'confirm' can be replaced by
 a. refuse b. refute c. verify d. a & b
9. "Egypt encourages foreign investment, especially that from Arab countries." The adjective 'foreign' in this utterance is an antonym of
 a. domestic b. familiar c. alien d. unfamiliar
10. This car has crashed a tree.
 a. into b. for c. out d. with
11. When you stay, you don't get enough sleep.
 a. in late b. in early c. up early d. up late
12. The man who applicants in this company has a degree علم النفس شهادة جامعية.
 a. interviewee b. interviewer
 c. interview d. interviews
13. The who talks to applicants in this company has a degree in psychology.
 a. interviewee b. interviewer
 c. interview d. interviews
14. Each hopes to give a good impression in order to get the job.
 a. interviewee b. interviewer
 c. interview d. interviews
15. When we send a letter, we write the on the envelope.
 a. headline b. address c. title d. entitle
16. He works in a factory. His job is 'Engineer'.
 a. headline b. address c. title d. entitle
17. The of the news report attracted my attention.
 a. headline b. address c. title d. entitle

Part IV

Language

1 Past Perfect Simple : Active & Passive الماضى التام البسيط : المعلوم والمجهول

Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	Subj. الفاعل + had / hadn't + p.p. ... - He had done the shopping before returning home. - Mum hadn't prepared lunch by midday.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Had + subj. + p.p. ... ? - Had he done the shopping before returning home ?
Wh-, Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + had + subj. + p.p. .. ? - What had he done before returning home ?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. المفعول + had + been + p.p. .. ? - I had done the shopping before I went home. (معلوم) - The shopping had been done (by me) before I went home. (مجهول) - After she had cooked lunch, she took a rest. (معلوم) - After lunch had been cooked (by her), she took a rest. (مجهول)

Usage

1 يُستخدم الماضى التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين فى الماضى، ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمنى دال على وقت مُعين فى الماضى + by / before / this time

- By midnight, I had written two articles.
- Ahmed had arrived home before lunchtime yesterday.

2 يُستخدم الماضى التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر فى الماضى
- First, I sent 20 invitations. Then, I left the office.
= I had sent 20 invitations before I left the office.

3 يُستخدم الماضى التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وكان له أثر على حدث آخر فى الماضى (الأثر ناتج عن اكتمال الحدث الأول)

- He had eaten too much food, so he didn't eat any dessert.
- = He didn't eat any desert because he had eaten too much food.

العبارات الزمنية Time Clauses

١ لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع أزمنة الماضي :

Time connector الرابطة الزمنية	Time clause العبرة الزمنية	Main clause الجملة الرئيسية
by the time / في الوقت الذي / when / عندما / before / قبل	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)
after / بمجرد أن / as soon as / بمجرد أن / once / the moment / بمجرد أن / when / في اللحظة التي	ماضي تام بسيط + (حدث أول)	ماضي بسيط + (حدث ثان)
- It was only when / فقط عندما - It wasn't until / بعد	ماضي تام + (حدث أول)	+that ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) +

- ex. - Before I arrived home, it had rained for two hours.
- After she had worked in the company for 15 years, she became the manager.
- It was only when I had taken a rest that I began to write the report.

٢ لاحظ استخدام (until - till) :

- Past simple (منفي غالباً) + until / till / لغاية / حتى + past perfect
ex. - I didn't watch TV until / till I had done the housework.

٣ يُستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد كل من (after / before) في حال عدم وجود فاعل :

- ex. - After having lunch, I went back to my office.
- Before going back to my office, I had had lunch.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (Having) :

- Having + P.P. + , + past simple (معلوم)
ex. - Having slept for eight hours, I started to feel energetic.
- Having + been + P.P. ... + past simple. (مجهول)
ex. - Having been punished, he didn't come late again.

٥ لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـد حتى) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + P.P. + than + past simple
ماضي بسيط
- Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely / barely + P.P. + when / before +
ماضي بسيط

- ex.** - I had no sooner finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.
 - I had scarcely finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.
- No sooner + had + subj. + P.P. + than + past simple ماضى بسيط
 - Hardly / Scarcely / Barely + had + subj. + P.P. + when / before + past simple ماضى بسيط
- ex.** - No sooner had I finished the report than I gave it to the secretary.
 - Hardly had I finished the report when / before I gave it to the secretary.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات هامة

- ١ لاحظ استخدام (inf. + ing) في بداية الجملة بدلاً من (فعل + فاعل + Because) :
 - Having his own car, it was easy for him to travel a long way to work every day.
 = Because he had his own car, ...
- ٢ عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فإن الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام (كلاهما صحيح) خاصة مع (after / before)
 - She did (had done) the shopping at nine yesterday before she returned home at ten.

2 Past Simple Tense : Active end Passive الماضى البسيط : المعلوم والمجهول

في الجزء التالي سيتم تذكير الطالب بتكوين واستخدامات الماضى البسيط، وذلك لارتباطه بزمان الماضى التام في الشرح والتدريبات

تنويه

Affirmation الإثبات	...التصريف الثانى S.C. + الفاعل Subj. - Omar played tennis yesterday. - Sama ate two apples for lunch.
Negation النفي	Subj. + did not (didn't) + inf. ... ? - Omar didn't play squash yesterday. - Sama didn't eat two apples for lunch.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + was / were + P.P. .. ? - Omar played tennis yesterday. (معلوم) - Tennis was played (by Omar) yesterday. (مجهول) - Sama ate two apples for lunch. (معلوم) - Two apples were eaten (by Sama) for lunch. (مجهول)

الاستخدامات Uses

استخدم الماضي البسيط في الحالات التالية:

- ١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :
- I ate fish for lunch yesterday.
- ٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :
- I returned home at two. I had a shower. Then, I had my lunch with my family. After that, I went to bed.
- ٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :
- If I earned enough money, I'd buy a modern car.
- ٤ لاحظ :
أ. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I wish) تعبر عن تمنى في المضارع :
- I wish my father earned more money.
(والذي لا يحصل علي مال كاف و أتمني العكس !)
- ب. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (I would rather) تعبر عن عدم رضا أو رفض (الشيء في المضارع) :
- I'd rather you didn't ask me to lend you money.
(يعني ذلك أنني لا أريد أن أقرضك أي نقود !)
- ج. جملة الماضي البسيط بعد (It is time) تعبر عن تذكير أو لوم :
(المتحدث هنا يلوم أو يُذَكِّر)
- It is time you returned the book to the library.

ملحظات للمتفوقين Notes for advanced level

١. لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل عند بدء الجملة بظروف التكرار التي تحمل معنى النفي مثل (never / rarely / seldom / little) :
- She rarely got up late. (Rarely ...)
- Rarely did she get up late.
٢. في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل علي الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's time) استخدم بعدهم الماضي التام (had + P.P.) وليس الماضي البسيط :
- I'd rather you had finished the report last Friday.

Exercise On Language

تدريبات بنائية متدرجة تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم - ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع

تنويه

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. After the job, he has got married. (امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة الصباحية)
a. has got b. getting c. got d. had got
2. TV in the living room last night, I fell asleep. (امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
a. Watched b. Watching c. Watches d. Watch

3. Noha had an essay before she went to bed.
a. write b. wrote c. written d. been written
4. An essay had before Noha went home.
a. write b. wrote c. written d. been written
5. Had you the email by the time you left the office?
a. sent b. been sent c. been sending d. send
6. Had the email by the time you left the office?
a. sent b. been sent c. been sending d. send
7. By the end of last January, I taken the mid-year exam.
a. have b. had c. had been d. be
8. By the end of last January, the mid-year exam taken.
a. have b. had c. had been d. be
9. As soon as I the report, I knew it was great.
a. had read b. have read c. was reading d. had been read
10. As soon as the report , I knew it was great.
a. had read b. have read c. was reading d. had been read
11. My brother had returned home lunchtime.
a. at b. in c. by d. after
12. After I the medicine, I felt better.
a. have taken b. had taken c. had been taken d. taking
13. After the medicine, I felt better.
a. have taken b. had taken c. had been taken d. taking
14. After the medicine , I felt better.
a. have taken b. had taken c. had been taken d. taking
15. I didn't feel better until I the medicine.
a. have taken b. had taken c. had been taken d. taking
16. Having the medicine, I felt better.
a. taken b. being taken c. been taken d. taking
17. Having , the medicine made me feel better.
a. taken b. being taken c. been taken d. taking
18. It wasn't I had taken the medicine that I felt better.
a. until b. when c. because d. as
19. I had hardly taken the medicine I felt better.
a. that b. when c. before d. b & c
20. No sooner the medicine than I felt better.
a. I had taken b. had I taken c. I was taken d. was I taken

ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع

تنويه



Part

I

Vocabulary

تنويه

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

barrier(n)	حاجز	teenage(adj)	مُراهق
erect(ed) (v)	يُشِيد - يبني	tone(n)	أسلوب / طابع - نبرة الصوت
necropolis(n)	جَبَانَة / مدفن - مدينة الموتى	witness(ed) (n - v)	شاهد عيان - يشهد / يري

تنويه

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adult(n)	شخص بالغ / راشد	objects(n)	أشياء - مقتنيات
brilliant(adj)	رائع - مُتَأَلِّق	overhead(adj)	علوي
bury(ied) (v)	يدفن	permission(n)	إذن - تصريح
cave(n)	كهف	pronunciation(n)	النطق
coastal(adj)	ساحلي	proud(adj)	فخور
connector(n)	رابط	recent(adj)	حديث
council(n)	قنصلية - مجلس	remains(n)	بقايا
create(d) (v)	ينشئ - يُوجد - يخلق	remarkable(adj)	هام - بارز
creation(n)	إبداع - خلق / إيجاد	report(ed) (n - v)	تقرير - يكتب تقرير - يُبلغ
emergency(n)	موقف طارئ	route(n)	مسار - خط سير
exploration(n)	استكشاف	sculpture(n)	فن النحت - تمثال
explore(d) (v)	يستكشف	spacewalk(n)	سير في الفضاء
grateful(adj)	ممتن - شاكر	speed(n)	السرعة
historian(n)	مُؤرِّخ	spill(n)	تَسْرُب - نضح
incident(n)	حادثة - مناسبة	spokesperson(n)	مُتحدِّث
keen(adj)	متحمس - ميال	stick - stuck(adj)	يلصق - يَغْلِق / ينحشر
launch(ed) (v)	يُطلق - يُنشئ	teenager(n)	شخص مُراهق
location(n)	موقع	uninjured(adj)	غير مصاب
monument(n)	أثر / قطعة أثرية		

Exercise On Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The twentieth century two world wars.
a. buried b. erected c. witnessed d. created
2. Our family house was fifty years ago.
a. buried b. tempted c. questioned d. erected
3. He is a cheerful person who would not enjoy reading a novel with a gloomy كئيب
a. tone b. meteorite c. speed d. spacewalk
4. There should be no between parents and their children.
a. remains b. barriers c. origins d. trust
5. The planners of the new city have made plans for a for the deaths of this new society.
a. permission b. disaster c. necropolis d. remains
6. Teachers of secondary schools have enough experience to control their students.
a. teenage b. adult c. baby d. b & c

2 Important vocabulary

7. There was an oil near the sinking oil ship.
a. spill b. incident c. sculpture d. remains
8. The of new jobs requires يتطلب starting new businesses.
a. speed b. route c. creation d. incident
9. We are always to those who help and support us in difficult situations.
a. remarkable b. grateful c. brilliant d. proud
10. People who are older than teenagers are called
a. spokespeople b. checkers c. disasters d. adults
11. They found this statue in sand.
a. buried b. tempted c. questioned d. erected
12. The road is closed because of a serious
a. speed b. route c. incident d. creation
13. Mum asked me to remove the of the meal and clean the table.
a. remains b. barrier c. origin d. sense

14. The of this desert area is an adventure.
a. council b. sculpture c. spacewalk d. exploration
15. Teamwork is necessary to a good news website.
a. confirm b. create c. question d. fear
16. Mustafa is one of the most students I have ever taught.
a. overhead b. coastal c. brilliant d. uninjured
17. What is the best to the city centre ?
a. speed b. route c. incident d. creation
18. My friend Ayman and I are an educational website soon.
a. launching b. zooming c. holding d. mattering
19. I need to get my father's before I can make this decision.
a. spacewalk b. conference c. emergency d. permission
20. This temple is full of valuable
a. explorations b. sculptures c. spacewalks d. councils
21. A is supposed to be fluent مُتحدِّث جيد and he or she should be good-looking.
a. spokesperson b. checker c. disaster d. foreigner
22. Sama has achieved success.
a. coastal b. grateful c. remarkable d. proud
23. Don't drive at this breakneck
a. route b. speed c. incident d. creation
24. The local has to find solutions to the dangerous streets.
a. exploration b. sculpture c. spacewalk d. council

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنبويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

achieve	a dream	يحقق حلم	keep	safe	يبقي بأمان
come	close to	يدنو من	launch	a website	يبدأ موقع
cover	important information	يغطي المعلومات الهامة	make	history	يصنع التاريخ
earn/ make	a living	يحقق دخلاً - يكسب رزقه	play	a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
give	permission	يُعطي إذن	tell	the story	يحكي القصة - يقرأ الخبر

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
erect	يُشِيد - يبنى	build, construct, put up
necropolis	جبانة / مدفن - مدينة الموتى	cemetery
nonsense	لغو - هراء	rubbish
opinion	رأى	point of view
prisoner	سجين	captive
remarkable	هام / استثنائي / بارز	extraordinary, exceptional, amazing, phenomenal
teenage	مراهق	adolescent, teenaged
tone	اسلوب / طابع	mood, style, attitude, spirit, feel
witness	يشهد / يرى	see, observe, be a witness to

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
erect	يُشِيد - يبنى	demolish	يهدم
nonsense	لغو - هراء	sense, wisdom	عقلانية - حكمة
remarkable	هام / استثنائي / بارز	ordinary, commonplace	عادي - شائع

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be happy about	سعيد بـ	make no sense	لا معني له
be involved in	متورط / مشارك في	19-year-old	ذوال ١٩ عام
be keen on	ميال إلى - متحمس لـ	oil spill	تسرب بترولي
be proud to / of	فخور بأن / بـ	safety barrier	حاجز الأمان
call for help	يتصل لطلب المساعدة	see ... differently to ...	يري ... بشكل مختلف عن
close to	قريب من	spokesperson for	المتحدث باسم
find out more about	يكتشف المزيد عن	That's nonsense.	هذا كلام فارغ
for some unknown reason	لسبب ما غير معروف	the same ... as me	نفس ... مثل
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	what makes it different is that	ما يجعله مختلفاً هو أن
in the hope of	لكي		

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

creep up

find out (about)

get off

go out

يتسلق

يكشف / يعرف (عن)

ينزل من

يخرج

punish ... for

read ... out

take out

يعاقب ... علي

يقرا بصوت عال

يخرج

General Exercise

On Vocabulary study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I work long hours every day to a living.
a. earn b. make c. hold d. a & b
- "You can easily feel the happy tone of his email." In this sentence, the noun 'tone' gives a synonymous meaning to
a. fool b. mood c. torch d. altitude
- "This temple was erected by the pharaohs." Which of the following replaces the verb 'erected' in this utterance?
a. deteriorated b. collapsed c. built d. demolished
- Something that is 'remarkable' is not
a. commonplace b. a common place
c. amazing d. extraordinary
- Young people see the world to adults.
a. difference b. different
c. differently d. a difference
- I am proud the first Egyptian to win this prize.
a. be b. being c. to be d. to being
- The guitar is one of the musical instruments Ammar could
a. give b. score c. play d. come
- I am an educational website next month.
a. telling b. launching c. keeping d. checking
- Mohammed Salah is really history with Liverpool.
a. earning b. making c. holding d. telling
- I want to you the story of my success.
a. tell b. launch c. keep d. check
- I can't understand what you say. It does not sense.
a. do b. take c. make d. look

12. My father punished us playing football in the living room.
a. into b. for c. out d. with
13. He changed his opinion some unknown reason.
a. for b. of c. to d. at
14. I asked Rokaya to read her essay to the class.
a. into b. for c. out d. with

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A teenage⁽¹⁾ world !

(SB page 46)

A new website has just been launched⁽²⁾ by teenagers⁽³⁾ for teenagers. Our World is the creation⁽⁴⁾ of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُراهق
- (2) يُطلق - يُنشئ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) إبداع - ابتكار
- (5) تعليم
- (6) رائج - مُتألق

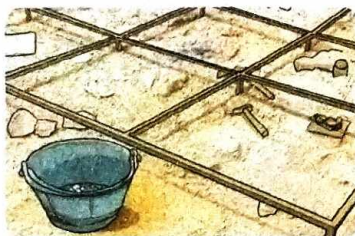
Our World has news, technology, education⁽⁵⁾, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults,' Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant⁽⁶⁾', said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen on the same things as me.'

Successful exploration⁽¹⁾

(WB page 26)

Two days ago historian⁽²⁾, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient remains⁽³⁾ of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been buried⁽⁴⁾ for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given permission⁽⁵⁾ to explore⁽⁶⁾ a necropolis⁽⁷⁾ (an area of land where people are buried) on Luxor's West Bank⁽⁸⁾,



Check Vocabulary

- (1) استكشاف
- (2) مؤرخ
- (3) بقايا
- (4) يدفن
- (5) إذن - تصريح
- (6) يستكشف
- (7) مقبرة - مدينة الموتى
- (8) الضفة الغربية

Language

• راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تثويه

Exercise On Language

• التدريبات التالية مُرتَّبة بشكل متدرِّج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تتوييه

🟡 ⚙️ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Lina looked over the moon as she her final exam.
a. was passing b. was passed
c. had passed d. had been passing
2. He didn't answer my call as he taken out a bad tooth at the dentist's.
a. has just b. was being c. had just d. had just been
3. He didn't answer my call as a bad tooth taken out of his mouth at the dentist's.
a. has just b. was being c. had just d. had just been
4. As soon as the teacher the lesson, the students started to ask their questions.
a. finishes b. has finished
c. had finished d. had been finished
5. As soon as the lesson , the students started to ask their questions.
a. finishes b. has finished
c. had finished d. had been finished
6. As soon as I came home, my brother my car.
a. was borrowing b. has borrowed c. had borrowed d. borrowed
7. After they the match, the players celebrated with the fans.
a. would win b. win c. winning d. had won
8. By the time I arrived at school, the bell
a. didn't ring b. had been rung
c. had already rung d. b & c

9. I didn't see Esraa. When I arrived at her house, she out.
 a. had gone b. had been going c. went d. goes
10. She started cleaning when the guests
 a. were left b. have left
 c. had been leaving d. had left
11. By the age of ten, I to swim.
 a. have learnt b. was learning c. had learnt d. had been learnt
12. Hatem was relieved to hear that he his exams.
 a. was passing b. had passed
 c. had been passed d. has been passed
13. She was tired because she late to bed the night before.
 a. is b. was being c. had been d. has been
14. It was only Esraa had passed her exam that she travelled abroad.
 a. before b. after c. until d. when
15. Sara couldn't buy a new mobile the shop had shut.
 a. until b. as c. no sooner d. hardly
16. Just after her flat, Malak visited her cousin.
 a. clean b. cleaning c. had cleaned d. has cleaned
17. When we got to the show, all the seats
 a. had taken b. had been taken
 c. had been taking d. have taken
18. I couldn't believe it. I chosen to play for the National Team.
 a. had b. have been c. had been d. will be
19. As soon as I met him, I knew I him somewhere before.
 a. was seeing b. see c. have seen d. had seen

2 Special cases

20. When he returned home, he found that his mobile phone disappeared.
 a. had been b. was c. has been d. had
21. Before for London, he had paid off all his debts.
 a. leaving b. left c. had left d. leave
22. It was only when I studying that I went to bed.
 a. has finished b. have finished c. was finishing d. had finished

23. After they the task, they will have some fun.
a. had completed b. completing c. completed d. complete
24. No sooner I started watching TV than the telephone rang.
a. have b. had c. did d. was
25. No sooner I start watching TV than the telephone rang.
a. have b. had c. did d. was
26. Having, the present surprised me.
a. opens b. opened c. been opened d. opening
27. By the time she finished writing her report, she six cups of tea.
a. had been drinking b. was drinking
c. had drunk d. had been drunk
28. After injected, the patient felt better.
a. being b. was being c. had been d. has been
29. had we furnished the house when we moved into it.
a. Hardly b. Before c. After d. No sooner
30. Scarcely had the thief seen the policeman before he
a. escape b. had escaped c. escaping d. escaped
31. They a great time when they were in Fayoum.
a. had had b. had been c. had d. were having
32. had I saved a lot of money than I bought a car.
a. No sooner b. After c. Before d. Scarcely

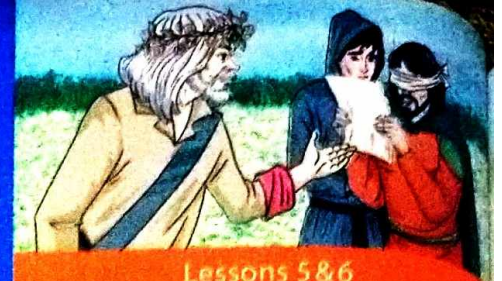
3 Check your understanding

33. before she went to bed.
a. Homework had done b. Homework had been done
c. She had been done d. She had done
34. "Having bought grandpa's newspaper, I went home". What does this mean?
a. After I had gone home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.
b. Before I went home, I had bought the papers for my grandpa.
c. Soon after going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.
d. On going home, I bought the papers for my grandpa.
35. "She had scarcely typed the email when she left". This means
a. she left just before typing the email
b. she left while typing the email
c. she left just after typing the email
d. she didn't write the email until she left

36. "First, I did my homework. Then, I went to bed". What does this mean ?
- a. Having been done, my homework went to bed.
 - b. Having done, I went to bed.
 - c. Before doing my homework, I went to bed.
 - d. Doing my homework, I went to bed.
37. "After I had planted the tree, I watered it". This means
- a. Having planted a tree, it was watered
 - b. Having been planted, the tree was watered
 - c. Having been planted, I have watered the tree
 - d. a & b
38. "I had breakfast and went out". Which of the following sentences gives the same meaning ?
- a. Breakfast was eaten before going out.
 - b. Having been fed, I went out.
 - c. Having had my breakfast, I went out.
 - d. I went out until I had breakfast.
39. "He refused to accept the invitation as he had no free time". What does this mean ?
- a. Having had no time, he refused to accept the invitation.
 - b. Having had some time, he accepted the invitation.
 - c. After having some time, he refused to accept the invitation.
 - d. Before having some time, he refused to accept the invitation.
40. "Having been injected, I felt much better". This means
- a. I was injected before feeling better
 - b. I was injected after feeling better
 - c. once I felt better, I was injected
 - d. once I felt better, I had been injected
41. "Before going home, I'd done the shopping". I mean to say ".....".
- a. Having done the shopping, I had gone home
 - b. Having done the shopping, I went home
 - c. I didn't do the shopping till I went home
 - d. Having been done, the shopping went home

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تلوينه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تلوينه

creep - crept (v)	يتسلل	tent (n)	خيمة
prisoner (n)	سجين	tempt to (v)	يفتن به / يجذب لـ
attendant (n)	خادم	take out (v)	يخرج
sense (n)	حاسة - معنى	nonsense (n)	بلا معنى
battle (n)	معركة	drum (n)	طبل
stage (n)	خشبة المسرح	scene (n)	مشهد - مكان حدث

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To is to come close to someone secretly.
a. broadcast b. creep up c. interview d. edit
- A is a place where something has happened, perhaps a crime.
a. stage b. scene c. headline d. drum
- A / An is something that people can understand.
a. source b. sense c. interview d. battle
- A is an area where actors perform.
a. stage b. scene c. headline d. drum
- A / An is a fight between two armies.
a. source b. sense c. interview d. battle
- A is a musical instrument you play by hitting it.
a. stage b. scene c. headline d. drum

7. He was kept for the crimes he had committed.
a. correspondent b. investigator c. prisoner d. editor
8. I don't believe this It is nothing but rubbish.
a. create b. creation c. sense d. nonsense
9. The allowed the suspect **المُتهم** to defend himself.
a. journalist b. judge
c. digital nomad d. photographer
10. When I returned back to my village after 25 years, I could hardly
our family house.
a. broadcast b. recognise c. creep d. interview

Part II

Grammatical Hints

أيهما يكون أي مهما **which is which** ...

لاحظ استخدام هذا التعبير عند الحديث عن التمييز بين شخصين أو شيئين متشابهين جداً، لاحظ
الجملة التالية وترجمتها:

1. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions,
but it must be clear **which is which**.

يوضح "سعيد" أن موضوعات الأخبار يمكن أن تتضمن الحقائق ووجهات النظر، لكن ينبغي أن يكون من
الواضح أيهما يُعتبر حقيقة وأيهما يُعتبر وجهة نظر.

2. The twins look so much alike I'm surprised anyone can tell **which is which**.

- يبدو التوأمين متشابهان جداً لدرجة أنني أتعجب عندما يتمكن أي شخص أن يميز أحدهما عن الآخر.

space

١. كلمة (space) بمعنى (الفضاء الكوني) لا تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an) :

- Astronauts travel to **the** space. (X)
- Astronauts travel to **a** space. (X)
- Astronauts travel to **space**. (✓)

٢. كلمة (space) بمعنى (مكان فارغ / مسافة) يمكن أن تأخذ أداة التعريف (the) أو أدوات التنكير (a - an) حسب السياق وقواعد استخدام كل منهما:

- There's an eight-metre-space between the front door and the wall of the garden. **The space** is enough to plant some trees.

Once

• **Once = at some time in the past**

في وقت ما في الماضي / ذات مرة

- Once, people were hunters. Their food came from animals.

بمجرد أن

• **Once = as soon as**

- Once I get home, I'll go to bed.

مرة واحدة

• **Once = one time**

- We go to Alexandria once a year.

... فاعل + فعل مساعد + Little / Hardly ...

- نستخدم فعل مساعد أو ناقص قبل الفاعل عندما تبدأ الجملة بظرف دال على النفي مثل :

• **Never / Rarely / Seldom / Little / Hardly ... + subj. ...**

- Hardly does Malak get up late.

- Little did I go to primary school on foot.

news

• **news (of / on / about) (n)**

خبر - أخبار (اسم لا يُعد)

- The news of the exam results is promising. (Not : The news ... are ...)

- This news is not true. (Not: These news ...)

لاحظ الفرق بين :

- ... on the news

يظهر في الأخبار / هناك تقرير عنه في الأخبار

- The Minister of Health was on the nine o'clock news.

- ... in the news

يتم مناقشته في الأخبار

- Covid-19 has been in the news for two years now.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- the latest news

أحدث الأخبار

- a piece / a bit of news (مفرد) خبر

- pieces / bits of news (جمع) أخبار

- welcome news

أخبار سعيدة

- the good news is ...

والجيد في الأمر هو أن ...

- the bad news is ...

والسيئ في الأمر هو أن ...

Exercise On Language Hints

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There're millions of stars in space.

a. a

b. an

c. the

d. no article

2. space between these two cars is enough for you to park your car in.

a. A

b. An

c. The

d. no article

3. "This bottle is to be used only once." In this sentence, 'once' means
 a. as soon as b. one time c. in the past d. before
4. she had arrived home, she started to prepare lunch.
 a. As soon as b. One time c. Once d. a & c
5., people travelled on horsebacks.
 a. As soon as b. One time
 c. At same time in the past d. Once
6. news is not confidential.
 a. This b. These c. A d. a & b
7. pieces of news are not confidential.
 a. This b. These c. A d. a & b
8. Little any free time over the last two weeks.
 a. I have had b. I haven't had c. had I had d. have I had

Part III

Language Skills

1 Writing a news report كتابة تقرير اخباري

Write a news report of about (180) words on an incident that happened recently :

Discovery of an ancient monument

Welcome to the evening news. We have a story that interests all people all over the world, especially those who are interested in ancient Egyptian history. Our story took place in the south of Egypt, in Aswan Governorate.

The hero of our story is a fifteen-year-old boy called Ahmed. A few days ago, he was playing hide and seek with his friends in an open space in the countryside. The boys were hiding and Ahmed was looking for them.

Ahmed searched for the boys here and there but he could not find them. Suddenly, he found a dark cave. Ahmed entered it looking for his friends.

To his surprise, he discovered an ancient monument from the Pharaohs era. Ahmed called out for his friends who forgot about the game and hurried to where Ahmed was.

The boys were all surprised. At first, they did not know what to do. When they calmed down, Ahmed suggested reporting monuments' officials in the governorate.

Soon, Ahmed's discovery was in the news. Reporters and correspondents wanted to talk to Ahmed. His videos were broadcast on local and foreign channels. His photograph was in the newspapers.

Ahmed is now famous. He is very proud of himself because he has helped his country.

2

الترجمة Translation

- ① Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:
Fake news is a serious problem/ matter in the field of Social Media. Fake news can be as simple as spreading misinformation, or as dangerous as spreading hatred propaganda.

- أ. الأخبار الكاذبة قد تكون مشكلة / مسألة خطيرة في حقل وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. يمكن أن تكون الأخبار الزائفة بسيطة مثل نشر معلومات مضللة ، أو خطيرة مثل نشر دعاية الكراهية.
ب. الأخبار الكاذبة مشكلة / مسألة خطيرة في مجال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. يمكن أن تكون الأخبار الزائفة بسيطة مثل نشر معلومات مضللة ، أو خطيرة مثل نشر دعاية الكراهية.
ج. الأخبار الكاذبة مشكلة / مسألة خطيرة في حقل وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. يمكن أن تكون الأخبار الزائفة خطيرة مثل نشر معلومات مضللة ، أو بسيطة مثل نشر دعاية الكراهية.
د. الأخبار الكاذبة مشكلة / مسألة خطيرة في مجال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. يمكن أن تكون الأخبار الزائفة بسيطة مثل نشر معلومات مضللة ، أو خطيرة مثل نشر دعاية الكراهية.

- ② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:
أنطلع للعمل كقارئ للأخبار أو محاور أو حتي مراسل في احدي القنوات الاخبارية العالمية التي تتصف بالحيادية، ولدي المؤهلات المطلوبة لهذه المهنة مثل اجادة اللغات الأجنبية.

- a. I look forward to working as a newsreader, interviewer, or even a correspondent in one of the neutral international news channels, and I have the qualifications required for this profession, such as proficiency in foreign languages.
b. I look forward to work as a newsreader, interviewer, or even a correspondent in one of the neutral international news channels, and I have the qualifications required for this profession, such as proficiency in foreign languages.
c. I look forward to working as a newsreader, interviewer, or even a correspondent in one of the neutral international news channels, and I have the qualifications required for this profession, such as proficient in foreign languages.
d. I look forward to working as a news reader, interviewer, or even a correspondent in one of the neutral international news channels, and I have the qualifications required for this professional, such as proficiency in foreign languages.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للمتقدمين فقط

• هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط. **تنويه**

broadcast

•broadcast (n)

برنامج / بث (إذاعي / تلفزيوني)

- I am not interested in that political news broadcast.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a radio / television broadcast

برنامج إذاعي / تلفزيوني

- a news broadcast

برنامج إخباري

- a live broadcast

برنامج مباشر / بث مباشر

- make / do / give broadcast

يقدم برنامج / يتحدث من خلال برنامج

•broadcast - broadcast - broadcast (v)

يذيع / يبث (عبر الراديو أو التلفزيون)

- The match was broadcast live on the sports channel

•broadcast - broadcast - broadcast (v)

ينشر - يُعلن

- She broadcast that her husband lost a lot of money.

editor

•edit (v)

يُنقح - يُعدّل (يقوم بعمل المونتاج)

- This news website edits news reports before publishing them.

•edit (v)

يرأس تحرير مجلة / جريدة

- This writer edited Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.

•edit ... out = cut (phr. v)

يقتطع / يجتزئ - يحذف جزء (من مقال أو فيلم)

- I was very angry when I knew that some parts of my article were edited out.

•editor (n)

مُحرّر - رئيس تحرير (مجلة / جريدة)

- This writer was an editor of Al-Ahram newspaper for three years.

•editor (n)

مُراجع - مُنقح (كتاب / مقال / فيلم / برنامج)

- An editor prepares a book to be published, for example by checking and correcting the text, making improvement, etc.

•editor (n)

برنامج حاسوبي أو تطبيق يقوم بتعديل النصوص أو الصور أو الأفلام

- I have paid a lot of money for this high-tech video editor.

•edition (n)

نُسخة - طَبْعَة

- The news about the accident appeared in the second edition.

investigate

•investigate = look into (v)

يُحقّق في - يَبْحِث (جريمة - حادث - مسألة علمية)

- The police are investigating the crime.

•investigate (v)

يَتَحَرَّى عن - يَحَقِّق مع (شخص)

- The bank manager was investigated for corruption. الفساد

•investigation (of / into) (n)

تَحْقِيق - تَحَرِّي

- Sometimes investigations of difficult crimes continue for years.

•investigator (n)

مُحَقِّق

- A clever investigator is working on the crime.

judge

•judge (v)

يُقَدِّر - يُقَيِّم

- It is easy to judge how long the flight will take.

•judge (v)

يَقْضِي ب / يصدر حكماً على

- The court judged him guilty and he was sent to prison. المحكمة المُذنب

•judge (by / from) (v)

يُعْطِي حكماً أو رأياً في الأشخاص والأشياء (بعد تفكير عميق)

- My father told me not to judge people only by what they say.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- It is not for + شخص + to judge ... من يقرر ... ليس ... أهلاً للحكم على / ليس ...
- It is not for us to judge if he needs an operation or not. We are not doctors.
- Don't judge a book by its cover.

لا تنخدع بالمظاهر

•judge (n)

قاضي - مُحَكِّم

- This judge is honest and fair.

•judgement = judgment (n)

حُكْم - رأي - قدرة على اتخاذ القرار

- He has enough experience to make a judgement about people by their behaviour.

•judgement = judgment (n)

حُكْم قضائي

- He won a judgement of two million dollars.

nonsense

•nonsense (n)

سلوك سيء (اسم مفرد لا يُعد)

- Tell your son to stop that nonsense.

•nonsense = rubbish (n)

لغو - هراء (اسم مفرد لا يُعد)

- It is nonsense to say that you never make mistakes.
- Don't believe that nonsense about healthy food on that channel.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

•make (a) nonsense of

يُفرِّغ ... من مضمونه - يُفْشَل

- Smoking makes nonsense of the treatment.

•be (a) nonsense

كلام فارغ

- This article is a nonsense. I can't understand what it is about.

•... not + stand / put up with / take + any nonsense

يرفض السلوك السيء

- Mr Ashraf won't stand any nonsense.
- complete / utter / absolute / total nonsense
- talk nonsense

مُجَرَّد هراء

يلغو - يقول كلام فارغ

report

•report (v)

يُبلِّغ (يكتب أو يجمع أخبار لصحيفة أو برنامج تليفزيوني)

- We sent a correspondent to Dubai to report on the conference.

•report (v)

يُبلِّغ الشرطة أو الجهات المسئولة (عن جريمة أو شيء مخالف للقانون)

- An old man reported a theft. عملية سرقة

•report (v)

يذكر - يُصرِّح بـ - يُعلن بشكل رسمي

- Doctors reported that there is 25% decrease in the number of COVID-19 patients.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

•report ... missing / injured / killed...

يُبلِّغ عن فقدان / إصابة / مقتل ...

- The shop owner reported ten thousand dollars missing.
- The reporter reported three soldiers killed.

•report sick ...

يُبلِّغ عن مرضه (يخبر رئيسه في العمل أنه لن يأتي للعمل لمرضه)

- Mr Emad has reported sick since last July.

لاحظ ما يأتي بعد (report) :

•report on + noun

يكتب تقارير أو موضوعات عن

- This journalist always reports on football matches.
- report that + جملة
- Our correspondent reported that there was an explosion. انفجار.

•report + (inf.+ing)

- This man reported seeing this car hit the old man.

يُبلغ عن

•report (on / of / about) (n)

- I have to make a report about the students' progress. تَحَسَّن

تقرير

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- write / make / give / prepare a report

يُكتب / يُعدّ تقرير

- submit a report

يُسَلِّم تقرير

- confirm a report

يؤكد تقرير

- a report says / states (that)...

بذكر التقرير (أن) ...

- an official / formal report

تقرير رسمي

- an unofficial report

تقرير غير رسمي

- a misleading report

تقرير مُضلل

مراسل / مُبلِّغ / مُقرَّر / مُكَاتِب

•reporter (n)

- I got a job as a news reporter for a TV channel.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

▶ تَوَيِّه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The investigation the robbery proved that the night watchman was involved.

a. of b. into c. a & b d. with

2. This is not the complete interview. Some of the questions and replies have been

a. corresponded b. crept up c. edited out d. interviewed

3. I wish you didn't that I am bankrupt. مُفلس

a. tempt b. interview c. recognise d. broadcast

4. That tailor is a real He has made me the best clothes I have ever worn.

a. find b. checker c. editor d. range

5. Will it if I am half an hour late tomorrow?

a. launch b. zoom c. hold d. matter

No.	Answer & Explanation	الخارجية والتوضيح
5.	d	(هل هناك مشكلة في أي شيء؟) (Will it matter ...?) - التعتير
4.	a	(العثور على اسم يعني) (a. corresponded) - العمل
3.	d	(إذاعة / بث) (broadcast) - العمل
2.	c	(تم حذفه أو استقصاه) (edited out) - العمل الإصطلاحي
1.	c	(هل هذا التقرير ممكن استحضام حرفي البحر (of / into) في هذا التقرير - يمكن استحضام حرفي البحر

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rodayna a good film last night.
a. was watched b. had been watched
c. had watched d. watched
- What I'd done was wrong and I ashamed of me.
a. was being b. was c. had been d. has been
- This time yesterday, I all the sandwiches in my lunchbox already.
a. had been eating b. had eaten c. was eaten d. have eaten
- some old wood, my father made a nice cupboard.
a. Using b. Used c. Being used d. Be used
- , my shoes looked almost new.
a. Polishing b. Having polished
c. Having been polished d. To be polished

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d الجملة مبنية للمعلوم ولا تستخدم الماضي التام في جملة بسيطة تعبر عن حدث واحد دون وجود عنصر زمني وقع الحدث قبله	
2.	b السياق ماضي ولا يمكن استخدام التام مع الحدث الثاني، كما لا يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر بالفعلي المقصود في هذا السياق.	
3.	b السياق ماضي تام لم يوجد (already). (This time yesterday, already.) الذي يورثي بعدد المفعول يمكن استخدام التام الماضي	
4.	a (Using) الجملة مبنية للمعلوم، لذلك نستخدم	
5.	c (Having been polished) الجملة مبنية للمجهول، لذلك نستخدم	

Test on Unit 10

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونياً



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A team of talented programmers have created a user-friendly
a. opinion b. chance c. search engine d. talent
2. You need to the facts mentioned in this report.
a. offer b. score c. check d. call
3. "She intentionally tried to annoy her sister." The adverb 'intentionally' here can be replaced by
a. accident b. on purpose c. deliberately d. b & c
4. 'Remarkable' is to as 'foreign' is to 'irrelevant'.
a. phenomenal b. ordinary c. everyday d. normal
5. The intelligent managed to identify who the criminal was.
a. editor b. investigator c. journalist d. reporter
6. To is to ask someone questions.
a. broadcast b. creep up c. interview d. edit
7. The pain stopped two days after the tooth off.
a. was taking b. was taken c. had taken d. had been taken
8. After he some good news, he left home.
a. had received b. has received c. is received d. receives
9. The pain stopped once I the bad tooth out.
a. was taking b. was taken c. had taken d. had been taken
10. No sooner saved a lot of money than I bought a car.
a. I had b. I have c. had I d. have I
11. Before I travelled to France, I French for about six months.
a. had been studied b. am studying
c. has studied d. studied
12. After on time, I checked my inbox.
a. had arrived b. arrived c. has arrived d. arriving
13. By the year 2005, we building this flyover bridge.
a. finish b. had finished
c. finished d. had been finishing
14. bought a new flat, I left the old one.
a. Has b. Having c. Have d. Had
15. at the front door of his house, Omar discovered that he had forgotten his key.
a. Arrived b. Arrives c. Arriving d. Arrive

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average high-school or college English student has likely heard of the Herman Melville novel, Moby Dick. What those students probably

don't realise is that Melville was inspired by real events. In 1820, the whaling ship Essex, captained by George Pollard, was attacked and sunk by a huge whale.

The whale, which survivors claimed was around 26 meters (85 feet) in length, rammed the Essex twice, causing the crew of 20 to abandon the ship in three lifeboats. Pollard wanted to head toward the closest land—the Marquesas or the Society Islands—but his crew convinced him to try for South America instead, since they had heard the islanders were cannibals آكلو لحوم البشر. So, they were to **face** the dangers of being eaten by them. That turned out to be a cruelly ironic decision, since the starving crew soon turned to cannibalism themselves. They even shot Pollard's cousin outright after drawing lots to see who would be eaten next. Ultimately, only eight members of the crew survived.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The synonym of the underlined word "**face**" is
a. confront b. support c. behave d. increase
- How many sailors do you think were in each lifeboat ?
a. Twenty sailors b. Ten sailors
c. Eight or more d. Seven or more
- What was the nearest land to the surviving sailors?
a. The Marquesas b. The Society continents
c. South America d. North America
- What is this text about ?
a. The story of Moby Dick b. Captain Ahab's adventure
c. A real adventure at sea d. The cannibals
- Moby Dick is for high school or college English students.
a. so famous b. not famous
c. not known d. nothing
- Melville was inspired by
a. what was in the age
b. who were in the whaling ship Essex
c. who were living with him
d. a real accident of a whaling ship
- Humans can be cannibals if
a. the whale eats them b. they eat human flesh
c. the whale attack them d. they eat plants
- Sailors working on a ship are called the of the ship.
a. cannibals b. whales c. crew d. survivors

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Honesty and integrity are absolutely essential for success in life – all areas of life. The really good news is that anyone can develop both honesty and integrity.

- أ. الصدق والنزاهة ضروريان للغاية للنجاح في الحياة – في جميع مجالات الحياة. الخبر السار حقًا هو أنه يمكن لأي شخص أن يتسم بالصدق والنزاهة.
- ب. الصادق والنزاهة ضروريان للغاية للنجاح في الحياة – في جميع مجالات الحياة. الخبر السار حقًا هو أنه يمكن لأي شخص تطوير الصدق والنزاهة.
- ج. الصدق والنزاهة ضروريان للغاية للنجاح في الحياة – في جميع مجالات الحياة. الخبر السار حقًا هو أنه يمكن لأي شخص أن يتسم بالصدق والنزاهة.
- د. الصدق والنزاهة ضروريان للغاية للنجاح في الحياة – في جميع مجالات الحياة. الخبر اليسير حقًا هو أنه يمكن لأي شخص تطوير الصدق والنزاهة.

4 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ليس حسن المظهر أو التحدث بشكل جيد هما فقط ما يحتاجهما قارئ الأخبار في التلفزيون، فالثقافة الواسعة وسرعة البديهة مهارات ضرورية أيضا.

- a. Looking good or speaking well is not only what a TV newsreader needs. Board culture and quick intelligence are also necessary skills.
- b. Not only looking good or speaking well is what a TV newsreader need. Broad culture and quick wit are also necessary skills.
- c. Not only looking good or speaking well is what TV newsreader needs. Broad culture and quick wit are also necessary skills.
- d. Not only looking good or speaking well is what a TV newsreader needs. Broad culture and quick wit are also necessary skills.

5 Write an essay of about 180 words on :

‘Something important that has been in the news recently.’

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية فى بنك الأسئلة.

تنويه

UNIT 11

What a performance!

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 30 : 35

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

❖ Reading :

Online film reviews

❖ Writing :

Two film reviews

❖ Listening :

Interview with a film critic ; intonation

❖ Speaking :

- Explain how a film affects you

❖ Language :

- Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs

❖ Life skills :

- Communication : listening to others' opinions ; Respect for others ; recognising differences in opinions



• بنك الأسئلة للمراجعة اليومية والشهرية.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
• Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
• التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

التقارير
الوحدة



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى فى الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

action (n)	الحركة - حَدَث	historical (adj)	تاريخي
action films(n)	أفلام الحركة (الصراع)	historical films(n)	أفلام تاريخية
animation(n)	الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية	horror (n)	الرعب
animated(adj)	ملئ بالحيوية - متحرك	horror films(n)	أفلام الرعب
bestselling(adj)	الأكثر مبيعاً	hostile(adj)	عدواني
comedy(n)	فيلم كوميدي - كوميديا / الفكاهة	mate(n)	رفيق - زميل
constantly(adv)	باستمرار - بانتظام	musical(n)	مسرحية / فيلم غنائي
crew(n)	طاقم العمل	romantic(adj)	رومانسي - حالم - خيالي
harness(ed) (v)	يستخدم - يُسخر	sci-fi = science fiction(n)	الخيال العلمي
		visuals(n)	المؤثرات البصرية

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

a bit(adv)	قليلاً	marvellous(adj)	رائع
acting(n)	الأداء التمثيلي	mathematician(n)	عالم رياضيات
adapt (ed) (v)	يقتبس - يتكيف / يتأقلم	meanwhile(adv)	في تلك الأثناء
approve (d) (v)	يؤيد - يستحسن	mission(n)	مهمة
brilliant(adj)	رائع	mixed(adj)	مختلط
cartoon(n)	أفلام رسوم متحركة	neighbourhood(n)	الحي - الجيرة
certain(adj)	مؤكد - متأكد	performance(n)	أداء
choice(n)	اختيار	pity(n)	الشفقة - الحسرة
colleague(n)	زميل (عمل)	quite(adv)	إلى حد ما
critic(n)	ناقد	recommend(ed) (v)	ينصح به - يوصي به
cruel(adj)	قاسي	remake(n)	إعادة إنتاج
		rescue (d) (n - v)	إنقاذ - يُنقذ

demonstrate (d) (v)	يُوضِّح - يُبرز	review(n)	عرض نقدي -
director(n)	مُخرِج (برنامج/ فيلم/ ...)	scared(adj)	مراجعة نقدية
documentary(n)	فيلم وثائقي	script(n)	خائف - مفزوع
energy(n)	حيوية - طاقة		نص مكتوب -
enjoyable(adj)	ممتع	soundtrack(n)	سيناريو
escape(d) (v)	يهرب/ يفر	special effects	ملف صوتي
extremely(adv)	للاية / جداً	storyline(n)	تأثيرات خاصة
fan(n)	مُعجب - مُشجع	style(n)	الأحداث - العقدة
film (ed) (v)	يصور فيلم	survive (d) (v)	أسلوب - نمط
genuine(adj)	أصلي	talent(n)	ينجو - يبقى حياً
incredibly(adv)	بشكل هائل	talented(adj)	موهبة
intonation(n)	نبرة الصوت -	totally(adv)	موهوب
lack (ed) (v - n)	تنغيم الصوت	typical(adj)	كلياً / تماماً
location(n)	ينقصه - نقص / عجز	version(n)	نموذجي - قياسي
Mars(n)	موقع	warmth(n)	نسخة
Martian (n - adj)	كوكب المريخ		حميمية - دفء
	المريخي - من المريخ		

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جداً.

تنويه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
action film(n) أفلام الحركة / القتال	a film that has a lot of exciting scenes in it, in which people fight, chase, and kill each other
animation(n) الرسوم المتحركة	a film, television programme, computer game, etc. that has pictures, clay صلال models, etc. that seem to be really moving
comedy(n) فيلم كوميدي	a play, film, or television programme that is intended مقصود to make people laugh
constantly(adv) باستمرار - دائماً	all the time
historical(adj) تاريخي	describing or based on أحداث قائمة على events in the past
horror(n) الرعب	a strong feeling of shock الصدمة and fear الخوف
incredibly(adv) بشكل خرافي - بشكل غير معقول	in a way that is difficult to believe

Martian (n - adj) مخلوق خيالي من المريخ	an imaginary creature مخلوق خيالي from the planet Mars
musical (n) مسرحية / فيلم غنائي	a play or a film that includes singing and dancing
romantic (adj) رومانسي	relating مُتعلق to feelings of love or a loving relationship علاقة
sci-fi = science fiction (n) الخيال العلمي	stories about events in the future which are affected by imaginary خيالي developments in science
storyline (n) الأحداث - العُقدة	the main set سلسلة of related مترابطة events in a story
surprisingly (adv) بشكل مُذهِل	in an unexpected way
talented (adj) موهوب	very good at doing something
unkind (adj) غير ودود	not friendly

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Being to animals is not good behaviour.
a. marvellous b. musical c. hostile d. brilliant
- If you like films, then you will like this film about ghosts أشباح.
a. animation b. comedy c. horror d. romantic
- Children usually like films. Fighting attracts them.
a. action b. comedy c. horror d. romantic
- My friend talks about his little daughter. He is crazy about her.
a. a bit b. quite c. constant d. constantly
- Someone who is fond of songs will prefer to watch
a. actions b. horrors c. musicals d. romantics
- Scientists could the power of the sun to produce electricity.
a. adapt b. harness c. demonstrate d. survive
- The guitar is my favourite instrument.
a. marvellous b. musical c. hostile d. brilliant

8. Children like films. Moving drawings attracts them.
a. animation b. comedy c. horror d. romantic
9. People who are cheerful prefer
a. animations b. comedies c. horrors d. romantics
10. Time travel only exists in stories.
a. science fiction b. musicals c. factual d. comedies
11. Thanks to HD cameras, modern movies' are far better than those of earlier movies.
a. mates b. reviews c. storylines d. visuals
12. All my father's office are invited to my sister's wedding.
a. cartoons b. mates c. talents d. cages
13. A famous director intends to make this novel into a film to benefit from its popularity.
a. talented b. hilarious c. Martian d. bestselling
14. Those who enjoy love stories would choose a/an film to watch.
a. action b. comedy c. horror d. romantic

2 Important vocabulary

15. When I am abroad, I miss family
a. performance b. script c. soundtrack d. warmth
16. Salah showed a for football at a very young age.
a. documentary b. talent c. version d. scenery
17. We had a/an time on the beach.
a. historical b. hostile c. marvellous d. original
18. The of this song isn't as good as the original one.
a. science fiction b. acting c. mission d. remake
19. The is the main set of related events in a novel or a play.
a. mate b. review c. storyline d. visuals
20. Would you agree to go on a / an to the moon?
a. cartoon b. acting c. mission d. remake
21. This film is absolutely Both viewers and critics like it.
a. brilliant b. upset c. brave d. awful
22. This tablet has the latest Android installed on it.
a. documentary b. talent c. version d. scenery

23. This film was from a novel by Agatha Christie.
a. adapted b. harnessed c. demonstrated d. survived
24. We are going to a documentary about Old Cairo.
a. escape b. film c. scare d. affect
25. There is a mall in our
a. performance b. neighbourhood
c. soundtrack d. warmth
26. I watched a about dinosaurs. It taught me a lot about them.
a. documentary b. talent c. version d. scenery
27. The research has that COVID-19 doesn't have serious effects on little children.
a. adapted b. harnessed c. demonstrated d. survived
28. Are you interested in reading the about the films you watch?
a. reviews b. mates c. storylines d. visuals
29. This school trip Rodayna. I wish she were with us.
a. mentions b. recommends c. lacks d. suffers
30. Finally, his parents of his marriage. They had been completely against it.
a. escaped b. filmed c. rescued d. approved
31. It is a to leave your job before getting another one.
a. pity b. script c. performance d. style

3 Definitions

32. are plays or films that include singing and dancing.
a. Actions b. Animations c. Comedies d. Musicals
33. means all the time.
a. Incredibly b. Constantly c. Historically d. Surprisingly
34. means very good at doing something.
a. Talented b. Unkind c. Romantic d. Historical
35. stories are about events in the future which are affected by imaginary developments in science.
a. Horror b. Martian
c. Storyline d. Science fiction
36. are plays, films, or television programmes that are intended to make people laugh.
a. Actions b. Animations c. Comedies d. Musicals

37. means in a way that is difficult to believe.
 a. Incredibly b. Constantly c. Historically d. Surprisingly
38. means relating to feelings of love or a loving relationship.
 a. Talented b. Unkind c. Romantic d. Historical
39. A is an imaginary creature from the planet Mars.
 a. horror b. Martian c. story line d. science fiction

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	lack	the warmth	تنقصه الحميمية
build	a windmill	يبني طاحونة هوائية	make	a film	يصنع فيلم
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	recognise	differences in opinion	يلتزم الاختلاف في وجهات النظر
harness	the wind	يستغل الرياح	win	races	يفوز بسباقات

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
a bit	قليلاً
animate	حي - متحرك
animation	الحيوية
brilliant	رائع / ممتاز
brilliant	ذكي - موهوب
comedy	كوميديا - الفكاهة
constantly	باستمرار - بانتظام
enjoyable	ممتع
harness	يستخدم - يُسخر
hostile	عدواني
romantic	رومانسي
romantic	حالم - خيالي
a little	قليلاً
living	حي
liveliness	الحيوية
very good, excellent, marvellous, great, terrific	رائع / ممتاز
gifted, talented, genius, intelligent	ذكي - موهوب
humour, fun, farce	كوميديا - الفكاهة
continually	بانتظام - باستمرار
fun, entertaining, amusing	ممتع
exploit, utilize, make use of	يستخدم - يُسخر
aggressive, unfriendly, cruel	عدواني
amorous, intimate, passionate	رومانسي
idealistic, unrealistic	حالم - خيالي

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
a bit	قليلاً	a lot, much, far, even	كثيراً
animate	حي - متحرك	inanimate	ميت - بلا حراك
brilliant	ذكي - موهوب	stupid, untalented	غبّي - غير موهوب
brilliant	رائع / ممتاز	bad	سيء
comedy	كوميديا - الطرفة - الفكاهة	tragedy	تراجيديا - مأساة
hostile	عدواني - كره	friendly, mild, favourable	ودود - معتدل - مُقَرَّب
romantic	رومانسي	unromantic	غير عاطفي
romantic	حالم - خيالي	realistic, factual	واقعي

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

animation	
animate (v) يُنْعِش / يُنَشِّط - يحيي	- Happiness animates our faces.
animation (n) (أفلام) الرسوم المتحركة - تحريك - الحيوية	- Computer animation is used in this cartoon. - This channel shows 3-D animations . - She was talking with animation .
animate (adj) حي - متحرك	- People, animals and insects are examples of animate beings. كائنات
animated (adj) ملئ بالحيوية - متحرك	- We had an animated debate about the advantages of smart technology.
comedy	
comedian (n) ممثل كوميدي	- Ismael Yassen was a great comedian .
comedy (n) عمل كوميدي - كوميديا	- El-Zaeem is a comedy by Adel Imam.
comic/ comical (adj) فكاهي / مُضحك	- I like watching comic films.
constantly	
constancy (n) الثبات - الولاء	- The constancy of prices is something positive.
constant (adj) مستمر - منتظم	- Your constant mistakes are what makes you lose jobs.
constantly (adv) باستمرار - بانتظام	- She constantly talks about her children.

horror		
horrify (v)	يُرعب - يصدِّم	- The last scene horrified me.
horror (n)	الرعب	- I was filled with horror by the last scene.
horrifying / horrific (adj)	مُرعب - صادم	- The last scene was horrifying .
musical		
music (n)	الموسيقى	- She is interested in folk music .
musical (n)	فيلم غنائي	- I watched a musical by Abdulhalim Hafez.
musician (n)	عازف	- Omar was a talented musician .
musical (adj)	موسيقى	- He plays some musical instruments.
romantic		
romance (n)	الرومانسية - قصة رومانسية	- She enjoys reading romances .
romantic (adj)	رومانسي - خيالي	- She enjoys reading romantic novels.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bestselling book	الكتاب الأكثر مبيعاً	leave ... using	يغادر ... عن طريق
animated film	فيلم رسوم متحركة	not yet	ليس بعد
back on Earth	بالعودة إلى الأرض	of the same name	له نفس الاسم
bring ... home	يُعيد - يستعيد	on a farm	في مزرعة
die in a storm	يموت في عاصفة	others' opinions	آراء الآخرين
far from	بعيد عن	romantic story	قصة رومانسية
fight scenes	مشاهد عنف	similar to	مشابه لـ
film reviews	عروض نقدية للأفلام	true life	الحياة الواقعية
five-year-old	ذو الخمسة أعوام	waste of money	إهدار للمال

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt ... from	يقتبس ... من	rule over	يحكم - يسيطر نفوذه على
climb onto	يصعد على	shout at	يصرخ في
escape from	يهرب من	steal (...) from	يسرق (...) من
go back	يعود - يرجع	take off	تقلع الطائرة - يخلع ملابس
leave ... behind	يغادر تاركاً ... خلفه	take off from	ينطلق من - يغادر

7

Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

adapt ... from - adapt ... for

- ... adapt ... from
- They adapted this film from a novel by Charles Dickens. يقتبس ... من - يأخذ ... عن
- ... adapt ... for
- They adapted a novel by Charles Dickens for a film. يُكيّف ... مع - يُعدّ ... ليصبح

historic - historical

- historic (adj) تاريخي / قديم (تصف الأماكن والمباني)
- The Pyramids are historic buildings.
- Egypt has the most historic sites in the world.
- historic (adj) تاريخي (تصف حدث أو وقت هام سيسجل في التاريخ)
- The two leaders had a historic meeting.
- Landing on the moon was a historic moment.
- historical (adj) تاريخي (متعلق بالماضي)
- The pyramids are buildings of historical interest.
- historical (adj) تاريخي (متعلق بدراسة التاريخ)
- I have done a lot of historical research.
- historical (adj) تاريخي (عن التاريخ)
- I have read a lot of historical novels.
- historic = historical (adj) تاريخي (وقع في الماضي أو كان موجوداً في الماضي)
- Alexandria witnessed historic / historical battles. شهدت

Exercise

On Vocabulary study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- His behaviour with the neighbours didn't show any kind of peace with them. It was (امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
a. hostile b. friendly c. aggressive d. a & c
- It is possible to lost when you visit a city for the first time.
a. come b. get c. make d. do
- We can the wind to make electricity.
a. do b. harness c. make d. become

4. "He has romantic ideas about the perfect society." The adjective 'romantic' in this context is the antonym of
 a. amorous b. idealistic c. unromantic d. realistic
5. "Rodayna is a brilliant student." In this sentence, the synonym of 'brilliant' is
 a. stupid b. gifted c. talented d. b & c
6. "I am a bit tired today." The adverb 'a bit' here is the synonym of
 a. a lot b. far c. a & b d. a little
7. "What I love most about her is her animation." Which of the following gives a similar meaning to the noun 'animation'?
 a. Liveliness b. Romance c. Inanimate d. a & b
8. Tragedy is to as brilliant is to bad.
 a. comedy b. romance c. animation d. animated
9. For a long time in the past, Arab kings ruled a large area of the world.
 a. from b. for c. over d. under
10. This film is adapted a novel by Mahfouz.
 a. from b. about c. with d. at
11. This film is based on a novel the same name.
 a. of b. to c. like d. up
12. The bus driver had to drive back because we had left one of the passengers in the cafeteria.
 a. ahead b. behind c. for d. to
13. Modern technology is what has made 3-D possible.
 a. animate b. animated c. animates d. animation
14. "Do you want me to believe that the baby is safe with his sister who is by a cricket صرصار in the kitchen?
 a. horrifying b. horrific c. horrified d. horror
15. Do you want me to believe that the baby is safe with his sister who screams in when she sees a cricket in the kitchen?
 a. horrifying b. horrific c. horror d. a & b
16. Do you want me to believe that the baby is safe with his sister who finds a cricket in the kitchen?
 a. horrifying b. horrific c. horror d. a & b

نظراً لطول القاعدتين فقد تم تقسيمهما إلى أجزاء ووضع تدريبات خاصة بكل جزء على شكل تمرين
للتقويم الذاتي. وذلك لتسهيل فهم شرح القاعدتين وتطبيقهما والتدريب عليهما

تلويح

1 Tag Question

السؤال المذيّل

النقاط الأساسية Basics

1 السؤال المذيّل هو سؤال قصير يوضع في نهاية الجملة الخبرية. ومعناه دائماً :
- "أليس كذلك؟" أو "هل أنا على صواب؟"

ex.

جملة خبرية

+

فعل مساعد / ناقص

+

ضمير فاعل

- Fish is my favourite food,

isn't

it ?

- The boys didn't go to bed,

did

they ?

2 الجملة المثبتة يتبعها سؤال مذيّل منفي :

ex. - Omar will arrive at 12 o'clock, won't he ?

- Sama can speak two languages, can't she ?

3 الجملة المنفية يتبعها سؤال مذيّل مثبت :

ex. - Omar won't arrive at 11 o'clock, will he ?

- Sama can't speak three languages, can she ?

4 في السؤال المذيّل نستخدم دائماً ضمير فاعل (وليس الفاعل) :

ex. - Ahmed isn't careful, is Ahmed ? (X)

- Ahmed isn't careful, is he ? (✓)

5 يبقى ضمير الفاعل (I - we) كما هما في السؤال المذيّل ولا يتحولان إلى (you) :

ex. - I took the medicine, didn't you ? (X) - I took the medicine, didn't I ? (✓)

- We are late, aren't you ? (X) - We are late, aren't we ? (✓)

6 في السؤال المذيّل يكون النفي بالصيغة المختصرة للفعل المساعد أو الناقص :

ex. - He works in a secondary school, does not he ? (X)

- He works in a secondary school, doesn't he ? (✓)

Mini test 1

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen is a clever doctor, ?
a. is Leen b. isn't Leen c. is she d. isn't she
2. Taha hasn't got any sisters, ?
a. has Taha b. hasn't Taha c. has he d. hasn't he
3. My sister hard, doesn't she ?
a. work b. works c. worked d. didn't work
4. My sister hard, does she ?
a. work b. works c. worked d. doesn't work
5. Ali has bought a new digital camera, he?
a. has b. has not c. hasn't d. b & c
6. Roaa is a clever student, isn't ?
a. she b. Roaa c. her d. hers
7. I did not arrive late, did ?
a. you b. I c. we d. my

2 Determining the correct auxiliary / الناقص الصحيح

يتم تحديد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص في السؤال المُذيل حسب زمن الجملة :
 ❶ في الجُمْل المنفية نستخدم الصيغة المثبتة من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود بالجملة في السؤال المُذيل :

- Nada **didn't** prepare lunch, **did** she ?
- Tarek **can't** swim, **can** he ?
- They **aren't** naughty, **are** they ?
- We **don't** have a car, **do** we ?
- You **shouldn't** go to bed late, **should** you ?

present simple

- ❷ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر نستخدم (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- I **help** you with the housework, **don't** I ?
 - You **work** in a hotel, **don't** you ?
- ❸ إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر مضافاً له (s /es /ies) نستخدم (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- Areej **helps** me with the housework, **doesn't** she ?
 - Ramy **works** in a hotel, **doesn't** he ?

past simple

- ٤ إذا كان فعل الجملة تصريف ثان (ماضي بسيط) نستخدم (didn't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- I **helped** you with the housework, **didn't** I ?
 - You **worked** in a hotel, **didn't** you ?

am - is - are - was - were

- ٥ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (is - are - was - were) فيتم نفيه في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- They **are** doing homework, **aren't** they ?
 - I **was** in the office when you left, **wasn't** I ?
- ٦ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (am) فيتم تحويله إلى (aren't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- I **am** waiting for the bus, **aren't** I ?
- ٧ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (am not / am never / am rarely) فيتم تحويله إلى (am) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- I **am not** late for school, **am** I ?
 - I **am never** late for school, **am** I ?
 - I **am rarely** late for school, **am** I ?

has

- ٨ إذا كان فعل الجملة (has + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hasn't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- Aya **has been** busy, **hasn't** she ?
- ٩ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (has) فيتم استخدام (doesn't / hasn't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- Aya **has** a lot of friends, **doesn't** she ?
 - Aya **has** a lot of friends, **hasn't** she ?

has to - has got to يجب

- ١٠ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has to) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- Rodayna **has to** be at school in time, **doesn't** she ?
- ١١ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (has got to) فيتم استخدام (hasn't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- Rodayna **has got to** be at school in time, **hasn't** she ?

have

- ١٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة (have + p.p.) فيتم استخدام (haven't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- The boys **have watched** the match, **haven't** they ?
- ١٣ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (have) فيتم استخدام (don't / haven't) في السؤال المُدبَّل :
- They **have** lunch at three, **don't** they ?
 - They **have** lunch at three, **haven't** they ?

have to – have got to يجب

- ١٤ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have to) فيتم استخدام (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- We **have to** finish the report today, **don't** we ?
- ١٥ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (have got to) فيتم استخدام (haven't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- We **have got to** finish the report today, **haven't** we ?

had

- ١٦ إذا كان فعل الجملة (had+ p.p.) فيتم استخدام (hadn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- Before lunchtime, Mai **had returned** home, **hadn't** she ?
- ١٧ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي (had) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- They **had** lunch at three, **didn't** they ?
- ١٨ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (had to) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- We **had to** finish the report yesterday, **didn't** we ?

need – needs – needed

- ١٩ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (need / need to) نستخدم (don't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- They **need to** take a rest, **don't** they ?
- We **need** some money, **don't** we ?
- ٢٠ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (needs / needs to) فيتم استخدام (doesn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- Amr **needs to** follow a diet, **doesn't** he ?
- ٢١ إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي أو المساعد (needed) فيتم استخدام (didn't) في السؤال المُذيل :
- Walaa **needed to** go shopping, **didn't** she ?
- ٢٢ إذا كان فعل الجملة المساعد (needn't) فيتم استخدام (need) في السؤال المُذيل :
- You **needn't** drive so fast, **need** you ?

's

- ٢٣ إذا كان في الجملة الأصلية ('s) فإنها يمكن أن تكون (is) أو (has) – لاحظ أنه لا توجد قاعدة حاسمة للاختيار بين (is) و (has) لكن يتم التحديد حسب المعنى :
- He's at home, **isn't** he ? (=He is ...)
- He's a headache, **doesn't** he ? (=He has ...)
- She's waiting for us, **isn't** she ? (=She is ...)

- She's boring friends, **hasn't** she ? (=She has ...)
- He's punished for making mistakes, **isn't** he ? (=He is punished...)
- He's punished me for making mistakes, **hasn't** he ? (=He has punished ...)

'd = would / had

٢٤ إذا كان هناك ('d + inf.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار (would)، ونستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المذلل :

- He'd prefer to have fish, **wouldn't** he ?
- She'd never shout at her, **would** he ?

٢٥ إذا كان هناك ('d + p.p.) في الجملة الأصلية فإنها تكون اختصار لـ (had + p.p.)، ونستخدم (had / hadn't) في السؤال المذلل :

- He'd bought a new car, **hadn't** he ?

٢٦ إذا لم يكن هناك فعل في المصدر أو (p.p.) بعد ('d) فإنها تكون (had) كفعل أساسي، ونستخدم (didn't) في السؤال المذلل :

- He'd lunch in a restaurant, **didn't** he ?

٢٧ إذا كان هناك ('d rather) في الجملة الأصلية نستخدم (would / wouldn't) في السؤال المذلل :

- He'd rather go out, **wouldn't** he ?
- She'd rather not do the shopping, **would** she ?

Mini test 2

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We take exercise to keep fit, we ?
a. do b. does c. don't d. doesn't
- We don't eat much to keep fit, we ?
a. do b. does c. don't d. doesn't
- A lion eats meat, it ?
a. do b. does not c. don't d. doesn't
- A lion doesn't eat grass, it ?
a. do b. does c. don't d. doesn't
- The girl ate fish for lunch, she ?
a. did b. didn't c. was d. wasn't
- The girl didn't eat cheese for lunch, she ?
a. did b. didn't c. was d. wasn't
- Ibrahim in the office, wasn't he ?
a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

8. I am very late, ?
 a. am I b. am not I c. aren't you d. aren't I
9. I am not very late, ?
 a. am I b. am not I c. are I d. aren't I
10. Maha has gone back home, she ?
 a. has b. hasn't c. does d. doesn't
11. Omar has breakfast before leaving home, he ?
 a. has b. hasn't c. doesn't d. b & c
12. Samar a drink during the break, doesn't she ?
 a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
13. Samar a drink during the break, does she ?
 a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
14. Samar a drink during the break, hasn't she ?
 a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
15. Samar a drink during the break, has she ?
 a. has b. doesn't have c. has had d. hasn't had
16. She has to wear the school uniform, she ?
 a. has b. does c. hasn't d. doesn't
17. She has got to wear the school uniform, she ?
 a. has b. does c. hasn't d. doesn't
18. We a break between lessons, have we ?
 a. have b. don't have c. haven't had d. a & b
19. We a break between lessons, haven't we ?
 a. have b. don't have c. have had d. a & c
20. We a break between lessons, don't we ?
 a. have b. don't have c. have had d. haven't had
21. We a break between lessons, do we ?
 a. have b. don't have c. have had d. haven't had
22. We have to arrive at work in time, we ?
 a. don't b. haven't c. do d. have
23. We have got to arrive at work in time, we ?
 a. don't b. haven't c. do d. have
24. You had a meal with some friends, you ?
 a. had b. had not c. did d. didn't
25. You didn't have a meal with some friends, you ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. did d. didn't
26. You had had a meal with some friends before going back home, you ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. did d. didn't

27. You hadn't had a meal with some friends before going back home, you ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. did d. didn't
28. She help with her homework, does she ?
 a. needs b. doesn't need c. needed d. needn't
29. I help my daughter with her homework, need I ?
 a. needs b. doesn't need c. needed d. needn't
30. She someone to help with her homework, doesn't she ?
 a. needs b. doesn't need c. needed d. needn't
31. She help with her homework, didn't she ?
 a. needs b. doesn't need c. needed d. needn't
32. She's watering the flowers, she ?
 a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. hasn't
33. She's never late for work, she ?
 a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. hasn't
34. She's always late for work, she ?
 a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. hasn't
35. She's enough free time, she ?
 a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. b & c
36. She's interesting jobs to do at home, she ?
 a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. has not
37. She'd rather stay at home to relax, she ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. would d. wouldn't
38. She'd rather not go out, she ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. would d. wouldn't
39. She'd a tiring day, she ?
 a. had b. did c. didn't d. wouldn't
40. She'd had a tiring day before she finally went home, she ?
 a. had b. hadn't c. didn't d. wouldn't

3 Determining the correct pronoun تحديد الضمير الصحيح في السؤال المُدَّيِّل

١ كما ذكرنا من قبل، يُستخدم دائما ضمير فاعل (وليس الإسم) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- Reem was angry, wasn't Reem ? (X)
- Reem was angry, wasn't she ? (✓)

٢ إذا كان الفاعل مُفْرَد مُذَكَّر عاقل يُستخدم ضمير الفاعل (he) في السؤال المُدَّيِّل :

- Omar bought a car, didn't Omar ? (X)
- Omar bought a car, didn't he ? (✓)

٦ إذا كان الفاعل مُفْرَد مؤنث عاقل يُستخدَم ضمير الفاعل (she) في السؤال المُذَيِّل :

- Malak likes ice cream, doesn't **Malak** ? (X)
- Malak likes ice cream, doesn't **she** ? (✓)

٧ إذا كان الفاعل مُفْرَد غير عاقل يُستخدَم ضمير الفاعل (it) في السؤال المُذَيِّل :

- A dog chased Yumna, didn't **a dog** ? (X)
- A dog chased Yumna, didn't **it** ? (✓)

٨ إذا كان الفاعل جمع عاقل أو غير عاقل يُستخدَم ضمير الفاعل (they) في السؤال المُذَيِّل :

- Nada and Sama are your best friends, aren't **they** ?
- The rabbits ate all the carrots in the garden, didn't **they** ?

٩ هناك أسماء يُحتمَل أن تكون مُذَكَّر أو مؤنث مثل :

- person - student - child - doctor- teacher - engineer - farmer...

إذا كان واضحاً أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (he / she) في السؤال المُذَيِّل حسب السياق :

- A person **in a white blouse** found my keys, didn't **she** ?
- A doctor with a **white moustache** has examined me, hasn't **he** ?

إذا لم يكن واضحاً من السياق أن الكلام عن مذكر أو مؤنث، فإننا نستخدم الضمير (they) في السؤال المُذَيِّل للإشارة إلى هذه الأسماء حتى عندما تكون في صيغة مفرد :

- A teacher has told you to improve your handwriting, haven't **they** ?
- A student gave this mobile to the head teacher, didn't **they** ?

١٠ نستخدم (they) كضمير في السؤال المُذَيِّل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :

- someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one/ nobody
- **Someone** has called you, haven't **they** ?
- **Everyone** is at home, aren't **they** ?

١١ نستخدم (it) كضمير في السؤال المُذَيِّل إذا كان الفاعل أحد الكلمات التالية :

- something / anything / everything / nothing
- **Something** has happened, hasn't **it** ?
- **Everything** is OK, isn't **it** ?

١٢ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على غير عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المُذَيِّل (it) :

- **That** is your pen, isn't **it** ?

١٣ إذا كان الفاعل (this / that) يعود على عاقل يكون الضمير في السؤال المُذَيِّل (he / she) :

- **That** is my son **Ahmed**, isn't **he** ?
- **That** girl is my daughter, isn't **she** ?

❶ إذا كان الفاعل (these / those) يكون الضمير في السؤال المذيل (they) :

- These are our friends, aren't they ?

❷ إذا كان الفاعل (there) تبقي كما هي في السؤال المذيل :

- There's something wrong, isn't there ?

- There weren't any problems, were there ?

Mini test 3

❸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some boys broke the window, didn't ?
a. some boys b. he c. they d. them
2. A bird has built its nest here, hasn't ?
a. it b. he c. she d. they
3. Two birds have built their nest here, haven't ?
a. it b. he c. she d. they
4. A child is crying next door, ?
a. isn't he b. isn't she c. aren't they d. isn't it
5. Someone brought you a present, ?
a. weren't you b. weren't they c. didn't they d. haven't you
6. A typical Egyptian farmer with traditional earrings is working on a farm, ?
a. isn't she b. is he c. aren't they d. are they
7. Somebody has stolen my mobile, ?
a. hasn't he b. hasn't she c. have they d. haven't they
8. Something went wrong with my car, ?
a. did it b. didn't it c. did they d. didn't they
9. This is my sister Sama, ?
a. isn't this b. isn't she c. isn't it d. is she
10. That is my old motorbike, ?
a. isn't this b. isn't she c. isn't it d. is she
11. These are the pens you want, ?
a. aren't they b. aren't these c. isn't it d. is it
12. There was a policeman in front of the supermarket, ?
a. wasn't he b. wasn't there c. was he d. was there

4 Tag questions with Compound and Complex sentences

السؤال المُذيل في الجمل المركبة

١ لاحظ تكوين الجمل التي تحتوي على روابط :

أداة ربط	+	جملة ثانوية	+	جملة رئيسية
- If		she works hard,		she will succeed in life and work.
- When		I arrived home,		Nada was asleep in bed.

٢ الجملة التي تأتي بعد الرابطة مباشرة ليست جملة رئيسية ولا تُستخدم في تكوين السؤال المُذيل :

- If she works hard, she **will succeed** in life and work, **won't she** ?
- = She **will succeed** in life and work if she works hard, **won't she** ?
- When I arrived home, Nada **was** asleep in bed, **wasn't she** ?
- = Nada **was** asleep in bed when I arrived home, **wasn't she** ?

لاحظ أن الجملة الثانوية لا تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :

- If Omar **doesn't** have enough time, Aya **will help** me, **won't she** ?

٣ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

I / We	+	think / believe / say / expect / ...	+	جملة رئيسية	+	سؤال مذيّل على الجملة الرئيسية
--------	---	--------------------------------------	---	-------------	---	--------------------------------

- I think Omnia **is** late, **isn't she** ? (Not: don't I)
- We believe that he **works** in a bank, **doesn't he** ? (Not: don't we)
- لاحظ أن عبارة (I think / believe ...) تؤثر على السؤال المُذيل من ناحية النفي والإثبات :
- I **believe** he **can win** the race, **can't he** ?
- I **don't** believe he **can win** the race, **can he** ?

٤ لاحظ السؤال المُذيل في الصيغة التالية :

He / she / it / you / they	+	think / believe / say / expect / ...	+	جملة رئيسية	+	سؤال مذيّل على الجملة think / believe ...
----------------------------	---	--------------------------------------	---	-------------	---	---

- Omar **thinks** that he is right, **doesn't he** ?
- They **believe** that life in the countryside is simple, **don't they** ?

Mini test 4

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Noha called me as soon as dad had got out of hospital, ?
a. did she b. didn't she c. had he d. hadn't he
- If they were rich, they would donate money for charities, they ?
a. were b. weren't c. would d. wouldn't

3. I think Zamzam will come first, ?
 a. do I b. don't I c. will she d. won't she
4. I don't think Zamzam will come first, ?
 a. do I b. don't I c. will she d. won't she
5. I think Zamzam won't come first, ?
 a. do I b. don't I c. will she d. won't she
6. Khalid believes I am rich, ?
 a. doesn't he b. does he c. am I d. aren't I

Notes for advanced level

ملحظات للمتفوقين

١ بعد جمل الأمر المثبت (افعل) يمكن أن نستخدم الصيغ التالية في السؤال المُذيل :

- ..., will you? ..., would you? ..., can you? ..., could you?
- Give me a hand, will you?
- Wait here for a minute, would you?
- Get me something to drink, can you?

كما يمكن استخدام (can't you – won't you) في السؤال المُذيل لإعطاء جمل الأمر المثبت مزيد من التأكيد والحزم :

- Keep silence, can't you?
- Return to your desk, won't you?

٢ بعد جمل الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم (will you) في السؤال المُذيل :

- Don't lie to me again, will you?

٣ لا يُستخدم حرف الجر في (ought to) في السؤال :

- You ought to be here in time, oughtn't you? (Not: oughtn't you to?)

٤ نستخدم السؤال المُذيل المثبت بعد الجمل التي تحتوي على ظروف وكلمات تعطي معنى النفي مثل :

- never- no - nobody - hardly - scarcely نادراً - seldom نادراً - rarely نادراً - little قلماً ...

- You never tell lies, do you? (Not: don't you?)
- It's no use trying to fix this mobile, is it? (Not: isn't it?)
- It's hardly been cloudy at all this summer, has it? (Not: hasn't it?)
- There's little we can do to help her, is there? (Not: isn't there?)
- Nobody arrived, did they? (Not: didn't they?)

- ٥ الصيغة (too + adj. + to) تُعطي معني النفي لكن السؤال المُذيل يكون منفي :
- She is **too young to get** married, **isn't she?** (Not: is she?)
- ٦ تُستخدم (must) في السؤال المُذيل في كل حالات استخدامها سواء ضرورة أو استنتاج :
- She **must** have been ill, **mustn't she?** (Not: didn't she?)
- ٧ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Let's) يكون السؤال المذيل (shall we) :
- Let's go fishing , **shall** we?
- ٨ يرتفع الصوت في السؤال المُذيل إذا كان المقصود سؤال حقيقي (المتحدث يريد أن يعرف شيئاً) :
- The train arrives at seven, **doesn't it?**
- ٩ ينخفض الصوت في السؤال المُذيل إذا كان المتحدث متأكد أن ما يقوله صحيح :
- It is a good idea, **isn't it?**
- ١٠ إذا جاءت الصفة منفردة نستخدم كما في المحادثات (isn't it) :
- Fantastic, **isn't it?** - Horrible, **isn't it?**
- ١١ لاحظ انه في الصيغة التالية يكون السؤال المذيل علي الجزء الأول من الجملة :
- **It + be + adj.** جملة + **sentence** صفة
- **It's** very important that we eat healthy food, **isn't it?**

Mini test 5

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Help me with the housework, you?
a. will b. would c. can d. a, b & c
- Don't shout at your sister, you?
a. will b. would c. can d. a, b & c
- They ought to help their neighbours, they?
a. ought to b. oughtn't to c. oughtn't d. ought
- The man must have lost his money, he?
a. must b. mustn't c. did d. didn't
- Ayman never wastes his time, he?
a. does b. doesn't c. does not d. b & c
- He's too fat to play football, ?
a. has he b. hasn't he c. is he d. isn't he
- Let's have a cold drink, ?
a. can we b. can you c. shall we d. shall you



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل	hilarious(adj)	مُضحك جداً
annoying(adj)	مزعج	powerful(adj)	قوي
awful(adj)	شنيع - فظيع	stupid(adj)	غبي
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج - بشوش - مبهج	upset(adj)	متزعج

• من الفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

affect(ed) (v)	يؤثر في	partner(n)	شريك
astronaut(n)	رائد الفضاء	personally(adv)	شخصياً
brave(adj)	شجاع	planet(n)	كوكب
burning(adj)	مُحترق - مشتعل	popular(n)	شعبي - محبوب
choice(n)	اختيار	prefer(red) (v)	يُفضل
empty(adj)	فارغ	real(adj)	حقيقي
ending(n)	نهاية	right (n - adj)	حق - مُحقّ / على صواب
equal(adj)	متساوي	scenery(n)	مناظر طبيعية
equipment(n)	معدات - تجهيزات	silly(adj)	سخيف - تافه
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	starve(d) (v)	يعاني الجوع - يموت جوعاً
involved(adj)	مُشارك - متورط	suffer(ed) (v)	يعاني
mention (ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول	surprising(adj)	مُدْهِش
officer(n)	ضابط	surprisingly(adv)	بشكل مُذهل - من المُدهش
original(adj)	أصلي	windmill(n)	طاحونة هوائية
owner(n)	صاحب - مالك		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Losing the final match is a / an experience I don't like to remember.
a. brilliant b. upset c. brave d. awful
2. His jokes made us laugh hysterically.
a. equal b. hilarious c. Martian d. bestselling
3. His smile never disappears from his face. He is a/an person.
a. cheerful b. cheerless c. stupid d. upset
4. Continuous criticism النقد is
a. amazing b. amazed c. annoying d. annoyed
5. This van has a engine.
a. hilarious b. powerful c. cheerful d. upset
6. What a decision! It is neither at its time nor in its place.
a. powerful b. good c. marvellous d. stupid
7. Be careful when talking to him because he is a sensitive person who gets very easily.
a. upset b. amazing c. cheerful d. hilarious
8. Salah is a/an footballer.
a. hilarious b. awful c. amazing d. constant

2 Important vocabulary

9. In Third-World countries, most people from poverty.
a. starve b. affect c. suffer d. prefer
10. Keeping birds in is something cruel. Birds have the right to their freedom.
a. cartoons b. mates c. talents d. cages
11. You should be honest, especially with people who you.
a. trust b. invade c. survive d. lack
12. Egypt is a peace-loving country that never or attacks other countries.
a. trusts b. invades c. survives d. lacks
13. The painting لوحة is now in the Egyptian Museum.
a. hilarious b. hostile c. powerful d. original
14. Such a historical decision needed a / an leader to take.
a. brilliant b. upset c. brave d. awful
15. I didn't hear him the place where he had left the keys.
a. mention b. recommend c. lack d. suffer
16. Ahmed Zaki great films.
a. felt b. harnessed c. blew d. made

17. I the same opinion with some of my friends.
 a. lack b. make c. share d. win
18. What I like most about the countryside is the fantastic
 a. documentary b. talent c. version d. scenery
19., he refused to join the national team.
 a. Surprising b. Surprisingly c. Surprise d. Surprises
20. You have the to object, but in a polite way.
 a. true b. false c. wrong d. right
21. I haven't eaten anything all day. I am
 a. starving b. affecting c. rescuing d. preferring

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدرّباته.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

feel	sorry for يشعر بالأسف علي	make	people feel good يُجعل الناس يشعرون شعوراً طيباً
get	married يتزوج	share	opinions with يتفق في الرأي مع
have	the right to لديه الحق في	take	control of يتحكم في
	a powerful message له رسالة قوية	take/ win	power يستولي على السلطة
	a happy ending ينتهي نهاية سعيدة	tell	a story يحكي قصة
make	mistakes يُخطئ		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing مُذهل	astonishing, very surprising, very good
annoying مُزعج	irritating, displeasing
awful شنيع - فظيع	terrible, very bad
cheerful مُبتهج - بشوش	pleasant, happy, jolly, joyful, joyous
hilarious مُضحك جداً - هزلي	very funny, extremely amusing
powerful قوي - مؤثر	strong, intense, influential
stupid غبي	silly, unintelligent
upset متزعج	distressed, troubled, worried, bothered, saddened

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
amazing	مذهل	everyday - ordinary	عادي
annoying	مزعج	pleasant, agreeable	سار - مقبول
awful	شنيع - فظيع	lovely, wonderful, excellent	رائع - ممتاز
cheerful	مبتهج - بشوش	sad, cheerless	حزين - كئيب
hilarious	مضحك جداً - هزلي	sad, serious	حزين - جاد
powerful	قوي - مؤثر	powerless, weak, ineffective	ضعيف - غير مؤثر
stupid	غبي	intelligent, clever	ذكي - ماهر

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

cage		
cage (v)	يحبس في قفص	- It is not fair to cage this bird.
cage (n)	قفص	- It is not fair to put this bird in a cage.
caged (adj)	محبوس في قفص	- It is not fair to keep this bird caged.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a surprising end to the film	نهاية مذهشة للفيلم	not really	ليس صحيحاً
all the time	طوال الوقت	on the island	على الجزيرة
at all	على الإطلاق	positive thinking	التفكير الإيجابي
be all the same	جميعها متشابهة	rescue mission	مهمة إنقاذ
be hostile to	يكون عدوانياً تجاه	scientific facts	حقائق علمية
be terrible at	سيء جداً في	surprisingly funny	ممتع بشكل مذهش
go into battle	يدخل معركة	the problem with	المشكلة في
have a right to	لديه حق في	true story	قصة حقيقية
		young man	شاب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give up	يستسلم - يُقْلَع عن	look like	يشبه - يبدو مثل
learn ... from	يتعلم ... من	share ... with	يتفق في ... مع

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be right to – have a / the right to

• be right to + inf.

مُحق في

- We are right to ask for better working conditions ظروف.

• have a / the right to + inf. / n.

له الحق في

- We have the right to ask for better working conditions.

= We have the right to better working conditions.

go / get + adj. = become + adj.

• go / become (dark / يظلم / mad / يفقد صوابه / blind / يفقد بصره / deaf / يفقد سمعه / dumb / يفقد النطق / wrong / يخطئ / يسوء / missing / يتوه etc.)

- If anything goes wrong, just call me.

= If anything becomes wrong, just call me.

• get / become (tired / يتعب / bored / يسأم / angry / يغضب / dressed / يرتدى ملابس / interested / يهتم / cold / يبرد / hot / يسخن / burnt / يحترق etc.)

- He easily gets angry and shouts at his children.

= He easily becomes angry and shouts at his children.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The crown Prince ولي العهد will take only when the King dies.

- a. part b. place c. power d. turns

2. He is the trumpet.

- a. playing b. doing c. telling d. having

3. "You're amazing, Sama." This means Sama is

- a. abnormal b. ordinary c. astonishing d. everyday

4. Something that is awful is not

- a. lovely b. excellent c. serious d. a & b

5. When we say someone is cheerful, we mean they are

- a. saddened b. distressed c. intense d. happy

6. "That's annoying." The adjective 'annoying' in this utterance is the antonym of
a. irritating b. displeasing c. pleasant d. amazing
7. A story that is very funny can be described as
a. very hilarious b. hilarious c. serious d. sad
8. She has to accept or refuse the suggestion.
a. right b. the right c. a right d. b & c
9. This film a powerful message.
a. feels b. harnesses c. has d. makes
10. My mother's words me feel good.
a. lacked b. made c. shared d. won
11. Influential is to as hostile is to cruel.
a. powerless b. powerful c. enjoyable d. fun
12. The problem action films is that they teach children violence.
a. at b. with c. for d. on
13. There was a surprising end the film.
a. from b. with c. by d. to
14. To me, romantic films are the same. A boy and a girl meet and one of the two families refuse their marriage.
a. at b. some c. all d. as
15. My uncle is very happy because he has given smoking since last October.
a. back b. down c. for d. up
16. She is to accept or refuse the suggestion.
a. a right b. the right c. a & b d. right
17. Something wrong with the washing machine.
a. got b. went c. become d. b & c

(WB page 32)

Injy : What kinds of books do you like reading, Lina ? Science fiction ?

Lina : Not really. Stories about space are boring. Personally, I like historical stories, because they teach you about the past. What do you prefer, Injy ?

Injy : My favourite stories are horror stories. They're really exciting and I love frightening films !

Lina : I disagree. I hate feeling scared. You like romantic stories as well, don't you ?

Injy : I used to like them, but they're all the same : a boy meets a girl and they get married ! You like romantic stories too, don't you, Lina ?

Lina : Some, but I agree with you. They're all the same !



Part IV

Language

Adjectives and Adverbs

الصفة والظرف

1 Adjectives الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالباً قبله :

- He bought an **expensive mobile** yesterday.
- I saw a **frightening animal** in the fields.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد :

- be - look يبدو - seem يبدو - appear يبدو - sound يبدو - taste يعطي مذاق
- feel يعطي رائحة smell - يعطي شعوراً أو ملمس feel

- Leen **felt cold**. - Ahmed **looks happy**. - Mum's food **smells delicious**.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً :

- afraid خائف - awake مستيقظ - asleep نائم - alone وحيد - alight مُضاء - alive حي
- Roaa feels afraid when she is left **alone**.
- We were happy that he was **alive**.

١ تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

- someone - somebody - something - somewhere
- noone - nobody - nothing - nowhere
- anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere
- everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere
- I met **somebody** important.
- He needs to buy **everything** necessary.

Mini Test 1

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mariam is a
 a. tall b. girl tall c. tall girl d. tall girls
2. Mariam is
 a. tall b. girl tall c. tall girl d. tall girls
3. Amr looked very after losing the match.
 a. anger b. angry c. angrily d. b & c
4. This flower smells
 a. a well b. a good c. well d. good
5. I saw in front of my shop.
 a. an afraid boy b. boy afraid
 c. a boy who was afraid d. a & c
6. I enjoy looking at
 a. babies asleep b. asleep babies
 c. a & b d. babies that are asleep
7. There's with my stomach.
 a. something wrong b. wrong something
 c. something who is wrong d. a & c

A Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

١ تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين في صفة معينة :

- Arabic is **easier than** English.
- A lion is **more dangerous than** a fox.
- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

٢ في الصفات القصيرة تتحول الصفة العادية إلى صفة مقارنة بإضافة (er / r / ier) لنهاية الصفة :

- fast – faster - old - older
- large – larger - close – closer
- easy – easier - happy – happier

٣ يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير من الصفة القصيرة إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big – bigger - thin – thinner

٤ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي :

- more أكثر / less + adj. صفة
- beautiful – more beautiful / less beautiful

ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more)) :

- Ahmed is stronger than Ali. - Ali is less strong than Ahmed.

٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:

- slightly بدرجة طفيفة - a bit قليلاً - a little قليلاً - even كثيراً
- a lot كثيراً - far كثيراً -

- Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.

- The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.

٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) : يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و يُفضل استخدام ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل :

- He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.
- We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.

٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :

- Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

٥ لاحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية بمعنى (كلما كلما)

- The + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The
- The taller you are, the faster you run.
- The more you eat, the less fit you are.

٦ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

- as + adj. الصفة + as
- Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.
- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٧ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

-not + as/so + adj. الصفة + as

- I am not **as old as** Omar. = - I am not **so old as** Omar.

Mini Test 2

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rosa's hair is Malak's.
a. long b. longer c. longer than d. the longest
- Malak's hair is long, but Rosa's is
a. long b. longer c. longer than d. the longest
- you exercise, the fitter you get.
a. The more b. More c. The most d. Most
- Sama is 1.65. She is than Ahmed who is 1.72.
a. less taller b. shorter c. less tall d. b & c
- A ship is than a plane.
a. slow b. more slow c. much slower d. as slow
- Ahmed drives a car better than
a. me do b. I do c. me to do d. a & b
- Omar is of the two brothers.
a. the older b. the oldest c. older d. a & c

B Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

١ تُميز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين) :

- French is **the easiest** subject.
- The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.
- The rabbit is **the least dangerous** animal.

٢ تتحول الصفة العادية إلى صفات تفضيل بإضافة (the) قبل الصفة وإضافة (est / st / iest) لنهاية الصفة :

- fast – **the fastest**
- large – **the largest**
- easy – **the easiest**
- old – **the oldest**
- close – **the closest**
- happy – **the happiest**

٣ يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big – **the biggest**
- thin – **the thinnest**

٤ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

- the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة
- beautiful – the most beautiful / the least beautiful

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية

(first/second/third/fourth...etc.) :

- Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (’s) الملكية:

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its -’s
- Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt’s best novelist.
- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

- He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

- Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

- The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

Mini Test 3

☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is company in the world.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
- Football is..... popular game in Egypt.
a. more b. most c. less d. the most
- This is picture I’ve ever seen.
a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
- Water is the expensive of all liquids.
a. most b. least c. less d. more
- He was the team’s player.
a. the best b. best c. better d. the better
- This is my first successful book.
a. more b. most c. the most d. the least

2 Adverbs - الظروف - الحال

مقدمة عن أنواع الظروف

1. Manner ظروف الكيفية	- تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل، غالبًا يوضع ظرف الكيفية في نهاية الجملة أو بعد الفعل أو قبل الصفة : - I dressed quickly . - She is beautifully dressed.
2. Place ظروف المكان	- غالبًا يأتي ظرف المكان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها : here – there – inside – outside – upstairs – downstairs ... - Can you sit over there . - Outside , there was a small pond.
3. Time ظرف الزمان	- غالبًا يأتي ظرف الزمان في نهاية الجملة وقد يأتي في بدايتها للتركيز على معنى الظرف : now – then – yesterday – tomorrow – today ... - I'm going to the cinema tomorrow . - Today , we're seeing our cousins.
4. Frequency ظروف التكرار	- غالبًا يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل أو بعد تصريفات (be) والأفعال المساعدة : always – often – usually – sometimes – rarely – scarcely – seldom – occasionally – never ... - They often have homework. - My dad usually goes to the cinema on Saturday. - She never eats meat. - He is rarely later for school.
5. Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة	- يأتي قبل الصفة ويحدد قوتها أو ضعفها مثل : - Very, quite, rather, even, a lot, a bit ... - She is very tall. - The weather is quite hot.

A كيفية تكوين ظروف الكيفية How to form adverbs of manner

① ظرف الكيفية : وهو يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

- A: **How** does Aya speak?

B: She **speaks clearly**.

- A: **How** do you drive a car?

B: I **drive carefully**.

- يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

- She **walks slowly**.

- The teacher **called** our names **loudly**.

- يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

(أ) بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

- slow - **slowly** • quick - **quickly** • safe - **safely** • strong - **strongly**

(ب) وتُضاف (ly) حتي وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)

- careful - **carefully**
- useful - **usefully**
- beautiful - **beautifully**
- cheerful - **cheerfully**

(ج) الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)

- possible - **possibly**
- terrible - **terribly**
- probable - **probably**
- sensible - **sensibly**

(د) الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلي (ily)

- easy - **easily** • happy - **happily** • lazy - **lazily** • crazy - **crazily**

(هـ) غالباً الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلي ظرف باستخدام : (in a way / manner)

- friendly - **in a friendly way** • cowardly - **in a cowardly manner**

(و) هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

- good - **well** • fast - **fast** • hard - **hard** • late - **late** • early - **early**

Mini Test 4

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Everybody at the party was dressed.
 - a. colourful
 - b. colourfully
 - c. quite a colourful
 - d. a quite colourfully
- Father was respected by those who worked with him.
 - a. great
 - b. greatness
 - c. greatly
 - d. greatest
- Amir is a quick runner. He
 - a. quick runs
 - b. runs quick
 - c. quickly runs
 - d. runs quickly
- Unit 11 is quite easy. I can
 - a. easily it study
 - b. it study easily
 - c. study it easily
 - d. study easily it
- He played the match very so he lost it.
 - a. bad
 - b. badly
 - c. well
 - d. good
- This girl behaves in a way.
 - a. friends
 - b. friendship
 - c. friendly
 - d. pen friends
- It is raining
 - a. heavy
 - b. heavily
 - c. heaviness
 - d. heavenly

8. Ali is a very driver. He makes a lot of accidents.
a. good b. well c. bad d. badly
9. He answered nearly all the questions He got low marks.
a. well b. bad c. right d. wrong
10. You should climb the stairs
a. careful b. care c. carefully d. carelessly
11. Now, my secretary does the office work more than before.
a. friendly b. efficiently c. lately d. well
12. She's a bad writer. She writes English
a. badly b. worse c. worst d. bad

B Using adverbs of degree with adjectives استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات

No.	Type النوع	Notes ملاحظات
1	Ordinary adjectives الصفات العادية	<p>١. الصفات العادية هي صفات ذات معني عادي مثل : - hot, tired, cold, angry, old, dirty.....</p> <p>٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية: - really حقاً - جداً very - إلي حد ما rather/quite - قليلاً little/a bit - للغاية extremely - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired.</p> <p>٣. يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات العادية في المقارنة والتفضيل: - Ahmed is older than Sama. - Omar is the tallest student at school.</p>
2	Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية	<p>١. هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل : - gigantic عتيق/قديم جداً - furious ساخط - ancient - brilliant رائع - hilarious مُضحك جداً</p> <p>٢. تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية: - absolutely تماماً - كلياً utterly/entirely - بشكل مُطلق - really حقاً - بشدة awfully - كلياً / تماماً totally - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.</p> <p>٣. في الغالب لا تُستخدم الصفات القوية في المقارنة والتفضيل: - Alexandria is more ancient than Cairo. (X) - This is the most boiling water. (X)</p>

3	Absolute adjectives الصفات المطلقة	١. هي صفات ذات معني مُطلق ، بمعنى أنها موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل : - مستحيل impossible - نهائي final - أساسي main - ميت dead ٢. لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المطلقة: - He is extremely dead . (X) - That is very final . (X) ٣. لا يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات المطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل: - My grandfather is deader than my grandmother. (X) - My grandfather is the dearest in the family. (X)
---	--	--

Mini Test 5

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sama didn't come to school today because she had a / an bad headache.
a. very b. absolutely c. completely d. utterly
- Mr Mohammed is an amazing teacher. We all love him.
a. absolute b. absolutely c. absent-minded d. absently
- Ali said that he was sorry to be late for the meeting.
a. easily b. awfully c. slightly d. hardly
- He couldn't buy the suit because it was expensive.
a. rather b. quiet c. never d. hardly
- We used to live in a very house in the countryside.
a. huge b. enormous c. big d. gigantic
- We like our English teacher. He is a good person.
a. quite b. rather c. never d. hardly
- The weather is hot today.
a. completely b. absolutely c. entirely d. very
- He has no money at all. He is poor.
a. rather b. fairly c. quiet d. extremely

C. Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① verb ظرف + adjective = noun + صفة

- He is a **good swimmer**. = He **swims well**.
- He **runs quickly**. = He is a **quick runner**.

2 verb فعل + adverb ظرف = adjective صفة + in/at ... + (inf. + ing)

- Mum cooks well. = Mum is good at cooking.
- Mai is slow when walking. = Mai walks slowly.

3 adjective صفة قوية = extremely/very + ordinary adjective صفة عادية

- He is starving. = He is very hungry.
- This water is extremely hot. = This water is boiling.

4 adverb ظرف = in + adj. صفة + way/manner.

- His talk was friendly. = He talked in a friendly way.
- He behaves in a simple manner. = He behaves simply.

5 It is + adj. صفة = adverb ظرف

- It is surprising that he has come first.
= Surprisingly, he has come first.
- Interestingly, he can speak four languages.
= It is interesting that he can speak four languages.

6 be + adverb ظرف + adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun

- She was extremely ill.
= - She had an extreme illness.
- My sister is clearly intelligent.
= - My sister has clear intelligence.

7 Subject + never/rarely/hardly/no sooner + verb

• Never/Rarely/Hardly/No sooner + فعل مساعد/ناقص + subject + verb

- We have never seen such bad manners.
= - Never have we seen such bad manners.
- My mum rarely left the house.
= - Rarely did my mum leave the house.

Mini Test 6

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. How do you run?
a. quick b. quickly c. quickness d. quickest
2. How are you at running?
a. quick b. quickly c. quickness d. quickest
3. She was intelligent.
a. clear b. clearly c. a clearly d. more clearly
4. She had intelligence.
a. clear b. clearly c. a clearly d. more clearly
5. After the training, I feel exhausted.
a. quite b. very c. really d. extremely
6. You have to work very with the other members of your team.
a. wonderful b. excellent c. hard d. gorgeous
7. To work with others, train yourself to be
a. intolerance b. tolerance c. tolerantly d. tolerant
8. Hassan Shehata was the coach of the National Team from 2006 to 2011. He was at coaching.
a. brilliantly absolutely b. absolutely brilliantly
c. brilliant absolutely d. absolutely brilliant

Exercise On Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Check your understanding

1. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means
a. This young man is very intelligent.
b. This is the first time I have ever seen such an intelligent man.
c. I have never seen intelligent young men before.
d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before.
2. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.
This means
a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on.
b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on.
d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose.

3. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means
- a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa.
 - b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa.
 - c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa.
 - d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa.
4. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means
- a. Both Rokaya and Leen are clever.
 - b. Neither Rokaya nor Leen is clever.
 - c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen.
 - d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen.
5. "He is exhausted." What does this mean?
- a. He is tired.
 - b. He is very tired.
 - c. He is very exhausted.
 - d. He is quite exhausted.
6. "The scene was extremely surprising." This means
- a. it was absolutely astonishing
 - b. it was very astonishing
 - c. it was astonishing
 - d. it was not astonishing
7. "My elder brother was furious." What does this mean?
- a. He was angry.
 - b. He was annoyed.
 - c. He was quite annoyed.
 - d. He felt too much anger.
8. "We were lucky to meet him." What does this mean?
- a. Luckily, we meet him.
 - b. Luckily, we never meet him.
 - c. Luckily, we met him.
 - d. Luckily, we never met him.
9. "Surprisingly, she agreed to marry him." This means
- a. she was surprised to marry him
 - b. she was a surprise to marry him
 - c. it was surprised that she agreed to marry him
 - d. it was surprising that she agreed to marry him
10. "He is a coward." This means
- a. he is a cowardly
 - b. he behaves cowardly
 - c. he behaves in a cowardly way
 - d. he shows no cowardice
11. "He is a good teacher." This is equal in meaning to
- a. he teaches well
 - b. he teaches good
 - c. he teaches goodly
 - d. he teaches badly
12. "He types perfectly on the computer". This means
- a. he is perfectly at typing on the computer
 - b. he is perfect at typing on the computer
 - c. he types perfect at typing on the computer
 - d. he is not perfect at typing on the computer

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تلويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• اهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تلويه

take control of	يسيطر على	invade(d) (v)	يغزو
go on (phr.v)	يستمر في	starve(d) (v)	يجوع / يموت جوعاً
put on (phr.v)	يرتدي (ملابس)	trust (ed) (v/n)	يثق - ثقة
win more power	يكتسب مزيد من السلطة	cage (n)	قفص
blow a trumpet	ينفخ البوق	honestly (adv)	بأمانة
take power from	ينتزع السلطة من	laugh at (phr.v)	يسخر من
a bitter pill to swallow	وضع مؤلم لا غللك تغييره		

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We don't him. He is not honest at all.
a. horrify b. starve c. trust d. suffer
- I sorry for Old King Lear.
a. took b. invaded c. blew d. felt
- My brother is learning to play the
a. trumpet b. football c. basketball d. tennis
- Men and women earn pay when they do the same job.
a. hard b. equal c. many d. few
- The told the soldiers where to go.
a. maid b. servant c. officer d. farmer

6. If you don't get anything to eat, you'll
 a. rule b. starve c. trust d. animate
7. The Iraqi army Kuwait in 1990.
 a. invaded b. starved c. trusted d. suffered
8. Old people from the cold in winter.
 a. enjoy b. recommend c. trust d. suffer
9. It's unkind to keep a bird in a just for fun or enjoyment.
 a. forest b. cage c. nest d. farm
10. The leader of the army power from the queen.
 a. took b. invaded c. blew d. ruled

Part II

Grammatical Hints

الشُرطة The police

١. كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع (are – were – have – don't) :
 - The **police were** looking for the thieves. (Not: The police was ...)
 - The **police keep** the whole society safe. (Not: The police keeps ...)
٢. كلمة (police) يعود عليها ضمير جمع (they – them – their – theirs ...) :
 - We are grateful for the **police** because **they** keep us safe.
٣. كلمة (police) لا تأخذ أدوات التنكير (an – a) :
 - The **police** arrested some criminals. (Not: A police ...)
٤. عند التحدث عن رجال الشرطة بشكل مستقل يمكن أن نقول :
 - a **police officer** / **police officers** ضابط / ضباط الشرطة
 - a **policeman** / **policemen** رجل / رجال الشرطة

better / best / the best

لاحظ الصيغة التالية مع بعض أفعال المشاعر:

- **like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj.** مفعول + **better / best / the best**
 - I like action films, but I **like** romantic films **better**.
 - Marwa likes all kinds of food, but she **likes** kebabs **best / the best**.
- **like / love / admire / enjoy ... + obj.** مفعول + **more / most / the most**
 - I sometimes play handball, but I **enjoy** football **more**.
 - I sometimes play handball or tennis, but I **enjoy** football **most / the most**.

Like / Unlike

• like مثل X unlike على عكس

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل - على عكس):

- Like his father, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.

- Unlike her mother, Rody is tall. They are different.

بنفس الكم أو الدرجة as much

quite as much = the same quantity / amount of نفس الكم / المبلغ

- Organic farming doesn't make quite as much money as inorganic farming.

= Organic farming doesn't make the same amount of money as inorganic farming.

public

كلمة (public) عندما تستخدم كصفة بمعنى عام تأتي قبل الاسم دائماً :

- It is better if we use transport which is public. (X)

- It is better if we use public transport. (✓)

Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I don't mind comedies, but I like musicals
a. better b. best c. the best d. b & c
- I don't mind comedies or romantic movies, but I like musicals
a. better b. best c. the best d. b & c
- her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like
- her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like
- The remake looks marvellous, but it just isn't fun and it's difficult to know why.
a. as much b. like much c. as many d. like many
- police chased some terrorists.
a. A b. An c. The d. a & c
- policeman chased some terrorists.
a. A b. An c. The d. a & c
- The police citizens from criminals.
a. protect b. protects c. are protected d. is protecting

Part III

Language Skills

1 Review Writing كتابة العروض النقدية

Write a review of about (180) about a film you have recently watched. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.

The Blue Elephant

The Blue Elephant (Arabic: Al Fil Al Azraq) is an Egyptian horror and mystery film which was produced and directed by Marwan Hamed in 2014. The story was adapted from an Arabic novel written by the famous Egyptian writer Ahmed Mourad.

The film was starred by the Egyptian actors: Karim Abdel Aziz, Khaled El-Sawy and Nelly Karim. It talks about a man called Yehia, who unwillingly comes out of isolation العزلة after five years, to resume يستأنف his work in El-Abbaseya Psychiatric مستشفى Hospital. Yehia is in charge of evaluating تقييم the mental العقلية health of the insane مجنون criminals.

Between 2018 and 2019, there has been a sequel named The Blue Elephant 2. According to Ahmed Mourad, the writer of the original Arabic novel, the book and the film hold two different endings. The director changed the closing scene of the movie to allow the film to satisfy a large number of viewers.

The Blue Elephant received mixed reviews but performed well in the Egyptian market during Eid time. The film did not follow the formula of the recent slew of Egyptian comedies, yet it managed to win over audiences across the Arab region. I really recommend this film.

2 Speaking skill مهارة التحدث

عندما تشارك آرائك مع الآخرين، استمع جيداً لما يقولون، وقل لهم هل تتفق معهم أم لا، وإذا كنت لا تتفق أخبرهم بأدب واذكر أسبابك، واطرح عليهم أسئلة لمعرفة المزيد عن آرائهم، ويمكنك استخدام تعبيرات مثل:

Why do you think ...?

لماذا تظن أن ...؟

What do you prefer?

ماذا تفضل؟

I agree with you.

إنني أتفق معك.

I disagree, because ...

إنني لا أتفق معك أن ...

I'm not sure.

لست على يقين.

Personally, I like ...

شخصياً، أفضّل ...

3 الترجمة Translation

① Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Action films usually include high energy, big-budget, physical chases, possibly with rescues, fights, escapes, destructive crises and so on.

- أ. عادةً ما تتضمن أفلام الحركة طاقة عالية ، وميزانية كبيرة ، ومطاردات جسدية ، مع احتمال عمليات الإنقاذ ، والمعارك ، والهروب ، والأزمات المدمرة وما شابه ذلك.
- ب. عادةً ما تتضمن أفلام الحركة نشاط عالي ، وميزانية كبيرة ، ومطاردات حسية ، ربما مع عمليات الإنقاذ ، والمعارك ، والهروب ، والأزمات المدمرة وما يشبه ذلك.
- ج. عادةً ما تتضمن أفلام الحركة نشاط عالي ، وميزانية كبيرة ، ومطاردات جسدية ، ربما مع عمليات الإنقاذ ، والمعارك ، والأزمات المدمرة وما إلى ذلك.
- د. أحياناً تتضمن أفلام الحركة طاقة عالية ، وميزانية كبيرة ، ومطاردات مستمرة ، ربما مع عمليات الإنقاذ ، والمعارك ، والهروب ، والأزمات المدمرة وما إلى ذلك.

2. Comedies are light-hearted plots deliberately designed to amuse and provoke laughter by exaggerating the situation, the language, actions, relationships and characters.

- أ. الأعمال الكوميديّة عبارة عن حكايات خفيفة علي القلوب مصممة حقاً للترفيه وإثارة الضحك من خلال تضخيم الموقف واللغة والأحداث والعلاقات والشخصيات.
- ب. الكوميديا عبارة عن حكايات خفيفة علي القلوب مصممة عمدا للترفيه وإثارة الضحك من خلال تضخيم الموقف واللغة والأحداث والعلاقات الشخصية.
- ج. الأعمال الكوميديّة عبارة عن حكايات خفيفة علي القلوب مصممة أحياناً للترفيه وإثارة الضحك من خلال تضخيم الموقف واللغة والأحداث والعلاقات والشخصيات.
- د. الكوميديا عبارة عن حكايات خفيفة علي القلوب مصممة عمدا للترفيه وإثارة الضحك من خلال تضخيم الموقف واللغة والأحداث والعلاقات والشخصيات.

② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لا تعجبني كثيرا الأفلام المُقتبسة عن روايات سبق أن قرأتها ، فلا يستطيع المخرجون أو الممثلون مهما كانت قدراتهم أن يصلوا الى الصورة التي تكونت في مخيلتي.

- a. I do not like films that are based on novels that I have previously read, because neither directors or actors, regardless of their abilities, can reach the image that formed in my imagination.
- b. I do not like films that are based on novels that I have previously read, because neither directors nor actors, regardless of their abilities, can reach the image that formed in my imagination.
- c. I do not like films that are based on novels that I have previously read, because either directors nor actors, regardless of their abilities, can reach the image that formed in my imagination.
- d. I do not like films that are based on novels that I have previously read, because neither directors nor actors, regardless of there abilities, can reach the image that formed in my imagination.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

animation

- **animate = living (adj)** جماد - لا حياة فيه inanimate \neq حيّ - نابض بالحياة
 - Man is an **animate** being. كائن حي.
 - Rock is an **inanimate** object. شيء جامد لا يتحرك.
 يملأ بالحيوية - يُنعش
 - **animate(d) (v)**
 - Laughter **animates** your face. الضحك
 - **animate(d) (v)** يُحرّك (الرسوم أو الصور في أفلام الكرتون)
 - In recent cartoons, pictures are **animated** by the computer.
 - **animated (adj)** مُفعّم بالحيوية والطاقة
 - The match was followed by an **animated** discussion among the fans.
- لاحظ ما يلي:
- animated cartoon / film فيلم رسوم متحركة
 - animated discussion / conversation نقاش / حوار ساخن
- **animation (n)** أفلام أو برامج الرسوم المتحركة (اسم معدود)
 - Children are attracted by **animations**.
 - **animation (n)** الحيوية (اسم غير معدود)
 - The students were talking with **animation** about the school trip.
 - **animation (n)** تحريك الرسوم (اسم غير معدود)
 - The **animation** in the film is made with the help of the computer.

comedy

- **comedy (n)** الكوميديا - عمل أدبي أو فني مضحك
 - **Comedy** becomes better when it has a message.
 - Adel Imam was the hero in a lot of **comedies**.
- **comedian(n)** ممثل كوميدي
 - Ahmed Helmy is my favourite **comedian**.
- **comic(adj)** كوميدي / فكاهي
 - I enjoy watching **comic** plays because they make me laugh a lot.
- **comical = funny (adj)** مضحك / هزلي / مثير للسخرية
 - I enjoy watching **comical** plays because they make me laugh a lot.
- **comic (comics) (n)** مجلات (فكاهية) مُصورة
 - When he was younger, he used to write for **comics**.

horror

•horror (n)

الرعب - الذعر

- My sister screamed in **horror** when she saw a mouse in the kitchen.

•horrors (n)

أهوال (غالباً جمع)

- Syrian people have suffered the **horrors** of war for years.

لاحظ ما يلي:

- have a horror of
- give someone the horrors

يخاف بشدة من

يخيف شخص بشدة

•horrify(ied) (v)

يُرعب - يُصيب بالذعر - يصدّم

- The details of the crime **horrified** many people.

•horrific = horrifying (adj)

سيء جداً - مُرعب

- I saw a **horrific** (=horrifying) car accident on my way home.

musicals

•music (n)

الموسيقى

- I heard loud **music** coming from a neighbouring villa.

•music (n)

النوتة الموسيقية

- I can play the guitar, but I can't read **music**.

لاحظ ما يلي:

- play music
- write / compose music
- make music = play / compose music
- the music business / industry
- a piece of music
- classical music

يعزف علي آلة موسيقية

يؤلف موسيقي

يعزف أو يؤلف موسيقي

النشاط الاقتصادي المتعلق بالموسيقي

مقطوعة موسيقية

موسيقي كلاسيكية

•musical (n)

فيلم غنائي أو استعراضي / مسرحية استعراضية

- Some famous singers are usually the heroes of **musicals**.

•musical (adj)

مُوسِيقِيّ - مُتعلّق بالموسِيقِيّ (صفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- The piano is my favourite **musical** instrument.

•musical (adj)

مُحبّ / مهتمّ بالعزف أو الغناء

- Girls, by nature, are more **musical** than boys.

•musical (adj)

ذو صوت جميل

- Sama has a **musical** voice.

•musician (n)

عازف موسيقيّ

- My brother is a talented **musician**.

remake

•remake - remade (v)

يعيد إنتاج (فيلم / اغنية)

- I think it is not usually a good idea to remake old films.

•remake - remade (v)

يعيد تصميم أو بناء

- I will remake my wedding dress to fit my sister.

•remake (n)

إعادة إنتاج (إنتاج جديد لعمل فني قديم)

- The remake of Lion King wasn't as successful as the original one.

bestselling

•bestselling (adj)

الأكثر مبيعاً

- This film is adapted from a bestselling book by Mahfouz.

•bestseller (n)

ال... الأكثر مبيعاً

- This book has been a bestseller for the last six months.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- In the tourist season, tourists the historical sites of Luxor and Aswan.
a. animate b. starve c. adapt d. demonstrate
- Not everybody that plays a musical instrument can music.
a. read b. write c. a & b d. hear
- The sudden appearance of the snake me the horrors.
a. had b. gave c. made d. saw
- Children like reading
a. comic b. comical c. comedian d. comics
- This play is hilarious.
a. utterly b. very c. a bit d. quite

No.	Answer & Explanation	الخارجية والتوضيح
1.	a	العمل (animate) هنا مستخدم بشكل مجازي بمعنى (مسلًا بالحيوية والنشاط)
2.	c	التعتبر (read/write music) يكتب (يقرأ) يعني (يعتبر الموسيقية)
3.	b	التعتبر (give me the horrors) يعني (مسلًا بالارعب)
4.	d	كلمة (comics) تعني (المجلات الفكاهية المصورة)
5.	a	الصفة (hilarious) صفة قوية مستخدم فيها ظرف درجة قوي

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Nobody has arrived yet, ?

a. has he b. hasn't he c. have they d. haven't they

2. A person with a false beard was arrested, ?

a. wasn't she b. wasn't he c. weren't they d. were they

3. There are some apples in the basket, ?

a. hasn't it b. isn't it c. are there d. aren't there

4. She seldom has lunch outdoors, ?

a. has she b. hasn't she c. does she d. a & c

5. Look at my sister's baby. Cute, ?

a. will you b. would you c. is it d. isn't it

5.	d	(isn't it) لم يستجيب أحد للصفحة الأخيرة -
4.	d	(seldom) الجملاء متباعدة -
3.	d	الجملاء متباعدة فتحتاج فعل مساعد متباعد -
2.	c	لا يوجد من لديه لحية (person) يعود على (they) الضمير المستعمل ويستعمل مستعملاً لشيء بالضمير ووجه رجل -
1.	c	الجملاء متباعدة فتحتاج فعل مساعد متباعد والضمير الذي يعود على (nobody) هو (they) -
No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح

احرص على اقتناء


EL-MOFASSER كتب

اللغة الإنجليزية في

للمرحلة الثانوية


امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Test on Unit 11

يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونياً

- **Create**

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When something is enjoyable, it is
 a. depressing b. gloomy
 c. entertaining d. boring
 2. Something that is awful is
 a. lovely b. excellent c. surprising d. terrible
 3. Not many people would prefer to read a traditional novel.
 a. historical b. hostile c. marvellous d. original
 4. I can't eat this rice. It salt.
 a. trusts b. lacks c. survives d. invades
 5. Cats are to rats by nature.
 a. historical b. hostile c. marvellous d. original
 6. means very good and enjoyable.
 a. Marvellous b. Musical c. Hostile d. Nervous
 7. Nobody knows the answer ?
 a. don't they b. does he c. do they d. doesn't he
 8. I am your best friend, ?
 a. am not I b. am I c. are I d. aren't I
 9. Let's go shopping, ?
 a. will you b. won't you c. shall we d. shall you
 10. Sama rarely visits us, ?
 a. doesn't Sama b. does not she c. doesn't she d. does she
 11. She works
 a. hardly b. more hard c. hard d. harder
 12. After the long walk, I felt tired.
 a. very b. absolutely c. completely d. totally
 13. I'm 178 cm tall. My brother is 179 cm. He is taller than me.
 a. much b. amazingly c. slightly d. more
 14. He runs
 a. faster b. fastest c. more faster d. fast
 15. Rodayna thinks I am right, ?
 a. am not I b. aren't I c. does she d. doesn't she

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the

squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed the warm blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and she stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost from the past since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour. The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen where the noise seemed to be coming. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. **The dark figure** stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother Ken! He could not help laughing at poor Sally. He had been out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh, too.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Sally reading ghost stories.
a. enjoyed b. didn't enjoy c. feared d. avoided
2. Who does the underlined phrase "**The dark figure**" refer to?
a. The strange noise b. Sally
c. Sally's brother d. The ghost
3. Sally realized the dark figure was not a ghost when her brother
a. woke up her b. turned on the lights
c. walked down the steps d. laughed
4. scared Sally so much.
a. Reading b. Excitement c. Bright light d. Voices
5. The best title for the passage is
a. Reading b. The dark colours
c. The kitchen ghost d. Ken and Sally
6. Ken had been
a. out with friends b. out alone c. asleep deeply d. in the garden
7. Sally Ken.
a. was angry with b. had had a look at
c. was not angry with d. had an idea about
8. Finally, Sally felt to have thought the dark figure was a ghost.
a. cold b. foolish c. frightened d. nothing

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Musicals or musical films are movies that are mainly based on combinations of music, dance, or songs. They are often starred by famous singers or popular bands.

- أ. الأعمال الموسيقية أو الأفلام الموسيقية هي أفلام تعتمد أساسًا على مجموعات من الموسيقى أو الرقص أو الأغاني. غالبًا ما يتم تمثيلهم من قبائل المطربين المشهورين أو الفرق الشعبية.
- ب. الأعمال الموسيقية أو الأفلام الموسيقية هي أفلام تعتمد أساسًا على مجموعات من الموسيقى أو الرقص أو الأغاني. غالبًا ما يتم تمثيلهم من قبل المطربين المشهورين أو الفرق الشعبية.
- ج. الأعمال الموسيقية أو الأفلام الموسيقية هي أفلام تعتمد أساسًا على مجموعات من الموسيقى أو الرقص أو الأغاني. غالبًا ما يتم تمثيلهم من بعض المطربين المشهورين أو الفرق الشعبية.
- د. الأعمال الموسيقية أو الأفلام الموسيقية هي أفلام تعتمد أساسًا على مجموعات من الموسيقى أو الرقص أو الأغاني. غالبًا ما يتم تمثيلهم من قبل المطربين المشهورين أو الأربطة الشعبية.

4 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد تعودت على أن أقيم الأفلام من خلال مشاهدتي للعمل بنفسي، وليس من خلال العروض النقدية التي تفتقر إلى الحيادية في كثير من الأحيان.

- a. I am used to evaluate films by seeing the work myself, not by the reviews that often lack objectivity.
- b. I used to evaluate films by seeing the work myself, not by the reviews that often lack objectivity.
- c. I am used to evaluating films by seeing the work myself, not by the reviews that are often objectivity.
- d. I am used to evaluating films by seeing the work myself, not by the reviews that often lack objectivity.

5 Write an essay of about 180 words on :

‘A film you have recently watched.’

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة. **تنويه**

UNIT 12

Achievements and goals

SB pages 62 : 71

WB pages 36 : 41

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

✪ Reading :

An article about a young entrepreneur

✪ Writing :

A report about an experience

✪ Listening :

A talk about SMART goals

✪ Speaking :

Discussing goals and how to achieve them

✪ Language :

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

✪ Life skills :

Self-management ; Decision-making ;

Collaboration



• بنك الأسئلة للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية.
• تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية الوحدة وبنك الأسئلة.
• Dictation في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
• التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

الإنجاز
الوحدة



Part I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achievable(adj)	ممكن إنجازُهُ	recipe(n)	وصفة طهي
entrepreneur(n)	رائد أعمال	relevant (adj)	ملائم
goal /aim (n)	هدف	relevant (adj)	خالص به / متّصل به / متعلّق به
honey(n)	عسل	set (a goal)	يحدد (هدفاً)
honeybee(n)	نحلة العسل	smart (adj)	ذكي - أنيق
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	specific (adj)	تفصيلي / دقيق - محدّد
objective(n)	هدف	time-bound (adj)	موقوت - له خطة زمنية
profit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد		

• من الفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adapt(ed) (v)	يقتبس - ينقل عن	manage(d) (v)	يتمكن - يدير
architecture(n)	هندسة معمارية	memory (n)	ذاكرة
business(n)	شركة - نشاط تجاري	multi- national(adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	non-essential(adj)	غير ضروري
coach(n)	مدرب	passion(n)	شغف
consider(ed) (v)	يفكر في	passionate(adj)	متحمس
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	possession (n)	ملكية - امتلاك
detailed(adj)	تفصيلي	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب على
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع به	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
drop(ped) (v)	يسقط - يخرج (من)	president (n)	رئيس
educate(d) (v)	يعلم	profession (n)	مهنة
end date(n)	تاريخ انتهاء	progress(ed) (n - v)	التقدم - يتقدم
essential(adj)	ضروري - جوهري	qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل
experience(d) (v)	يواجه - يعايش	react(ed) (v)	يتصرف بناءً على
experiences (n)	تجارب - مواقف	record(ed) (v)	يسجل - يصور
failure (n)	فشل	related(adj)	مرتبط - ذو صلة
		sensible(adj)	عقلاني - حكيم

fear (n)	الخوف	magnificent (adj)	رائع
final (n - adj)	نهائي	series(n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
finalists(n)	المتأهلون للنهائيات	share(d) (v)	يتشارك في - ينشر
fit (ted) in (phr. v)	يتكيف - يكيف - يجد وقتا لـ	short-term (adj)	قصير المدى - قصير الأمد
forever (adv)	للأبد	stand for (phr. v)	يمثل - ينوب عن
highlight (ed) (v)	يلقى الضوء - يبرز	tutorial (n)	درس خصوصي - مقرر تعليمي
importance (n)	أهمية	unlikely (adj)	من غير المحتمل
individual (n - adj)	فرد - فردي	vague (adj)	غامض
locally (adv)	محليا	whenever (adv - conj.)	عندما / كلما
long-term (adj)	بعيد المدى - طويل الأمد	winner (n)	فائز
lucky (adj)	محظوظ		

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا. **تنويه**

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
time-bound (adj) موقوت - له خطة زمنية	requiring مُحدّد completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time
specific (adj) مُحدّد	detailed and exact
relevant (adj) ملائم - مُتعلّق	directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered
recipe(n) وصفة طهي	a set of instructions تعليمات for cooking a particular محدد type of food
profit(ed) (n) فائدة - ربح	money that you gain by selling things or doing business, after your costs have been paid
measurable (adj) قابل للقياس	able to be measured
honeybee(n) نحلة العسل	a bee that makes honey
entrepreneur(n) رائد أعمال	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals صفقات in order to make money , often in a way that involves financial risks مخاطر مالية
achievable (adj) ممكن إنجازهُ	describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort جهد for a long time

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. My sister is interested in cooking. She has the of hundreds of delicious dishes.
a. recipes b. ranges c. accessories d. outfits
2. To succeed in your life, yourself goals to reach.
a. do b. achieve c. reach d. set
3. Using informal language in a formal email is not
a. time-bound b. specific c. relevant d. measurable
4. A good objective is one that is and possible to achieve.
a. non-governmental b. tutorial
c. non-essential d. measurable
5. A goal that is requires completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time.
a. time-bound b. specific c. relevant d. measurable
6. Reaching your in life and work is true success.
a. goal b. objective c. aim d. a, b & c
7. Dr Omar gave examples of the effects of coronavirus on the lungs.
a. time-bound b. specific c. relevant d. expensive
8. A phone can connect to the internet.
a. measurable b. specific c. smart d. time-bound
9. For a primary school student, getting the full mark in this difficult exam is not a/an target.
a. non-governmental b. achievable c. non-essential d. measurable
10. A is a very useful insect.
a. scorpion b. mosquito c. honeybee d. bug
11. As an ambitious, he is always dreaming of new projects.
a. entrepreneur b. sleepsuit c. filter d. cob
12. He makes a lot of from his business. That's why he is wealthy.
a. donations b. mistakes c. loss d. profit

2 Important vocabulary

13. Mr Ayman said he couldn't that day as he had been very busy.
a. stand me for b. fit me in
c. experience me d. share me on
14. The coach Salah from the match as he was badly injured.
a. dropped b. highlighted c. qualified d. reacted
15. Fear of may lead to it. Trust yourself and learn from your mistakes.
a. presentation b. possession c. failure d. tutorial

16. He is about where he is, so the police suspect him يشك فيه.
 a. multi-national b. magnificent
 c. sensible d. vague
17. He is after the operation. He is much better now.
 a. relating b. mentioning c. progressing d. recording
18. It is kind of you to blood to save the injured man.
 a. consider b. donate c. create d. expand
19. It is to have a time plan to achieve your goals.
 a. governmental b. non-essential
 c. essential d. non-governmental
20. In the Tokyo 2021, Ferial Abdelaziz was a in Karate.
 a. finalist b. organiser c. president d. inhabitant
21. This team failed to to the quarter-final.
 a. drop b. highlight c. qualify d. react
22. Small group help students learn and get ready for their exams.
 a. individuals b. possessions c. failures d. tutorials
23. Sama looked in her long dress.
 a. multi-national b. magnificent c. short-term d. vague
24. He a successful business in manufacturing. He is a successful businessman.
 a. manages b. mentions c. progresses d. stands
25. Most famous novels have been for the cinema.
 a. resigned b. tricked c. crawled d. adapted
26. The players were about winning the final match, so they scored a KO goal in the last few minutes.
 a. passion b. passionate c. matching d. match
27. The world economy has sharp losses during the coronavirus pandemic.
 a. stood for b. fitted in c. experienced d. affected
28. Sama angrily to her friends negative comment.
 a. dropped b. highlighted c. qualified d. reacted
29. He made a great in the conference.
 a. presentation b. possession c. failure d. tutorial
30. We all support this decision
 a. multi-national b. lucky c. sensible d. vague

3 Definitions

31. means requiring completion by a specified deadline or within a specified period of time.
 a. Measurable b. Time-bound c. Relevant d. Specific
32. means detailed and exact.
 a. Measurable b. Time-bound c. Relevant d. Specific

33. To be means to be directly relating to the subject or problem being discussed or considered.
a. measurable b. time-bound c. relevant d. specific
34. A/An is a set of instructions for cooking a particular type of food.
a. recipe b. range c. profit d. outfit
35. is money that you gain by selling things or doing business, after your costs have been paid.
a. Recipe b. Range c. Profit d. Outfit
36. Something that is is able to be measured.
a. measurable b. achievable c. relevant d. specific
37. A/An is an insect that makes honey.
a. accessory b. honeybee c. profit d. honeymoon
38. A/An is someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks.
a. accessories b. honeybee c. profit d. entrepreneur
39. The adjective describes a goal that can be reached, especially by making an effort for a long time.
a. measurable b. achievable c. relevant d. specific

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدرّباته.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	goals	يحقق أهداف	meet	an objective / a goal يتوافق مع هدف - يحقق هدف
feel	nervous	يشعر بالتوتر	play	a song يعزف اغنية the guitar يعزف على الجيتار
get	hard	يُصبح أصعب	reach	a goal / an objective يحقق هدف
give	a presentation	يُقدّم عرضاً توضيحياً	set	goals for ourselves = ourselves goals نضع لأنفسنا أهداف
have	a time limit	له حد زمني	speak	in public يتحدث على الملأ
	my first sight	أرى للمرة الأولى	start	a charity ينشئ جمعية خيرية
	smart goals	لديه أهداف ذكية	take	too long to complete يستغرق وقت طويل ليكتمل

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
achievable	مُمْكِنُ إِنْجَاذُهُ	attainable, possible
essential	رئيسي - جوهري	fundamental
get over	يتغلب علي	overcome
measurable	ملحوظ	noticeable, significant
measurable	قابل للقياس	quantifiable, computable
objective	هدف	goal, aim
profitable	مفيد - مُربح	beneficial, fruitful, useful
relevant	ملائم - مُتعلق	related, appropriate
specific	مُحدد	particular, specified, definite
specific	تفصيلي / دقيق	exact, accurate, precise

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
achievable	مُمْكِنُ إِنْجَاذُهُ	unachievable, unattainable	بعيد المنال - مُتَعَذِّر
essential	ضروري - جوهري	non-essential	غير ضروري
measurable	قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
measurable	ملحوظ	negligible	زَهيد / ضئيل / طفيف
profitable	مفيد - مُربح	unprofitable, profitless	غير مفيد
relevant	ملائم - مُتعلق	irrelevant	غير ملائم
smart	ذكي	stupid, dull	غبى
specific	مُحدد	non-specific, general	غير محدد - عام
specific	تفصيلي / دقيق	non-specific, vague	مُبْهَم - غير دقيق

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

achievable		
achieve (v)	يُحَقِّق / يُنْجِز	- This goal is easy to achieve .
achievement (n)	إنجاز - تحقيق	- The achievement of this goal is easy.
achievable (adj)	مُمْكِنُ إِنْجَاذُهُ	- This goal is achievable .
entrepreneur		
entrepreneur (n)	رائد أعمال	- He is an entrepreneur .
entrepreneurship (n)	ريادة الأعمال - المجازفة الاقتصادية	- He has a sense of entrepreneurship .

entrepreneurial (adj) ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة	- He has entrepreneurial thinking.
measurable	
measure (v) يقيس	- It will take time to measure this road.
measurement (n) القياس	- The measurement of this road will take time.
measurable (adj) قابل للقياس - ملحوظ	- This road is measurable , but it will take time.
objective	
objective (n) هدف	- I have an objective to achieve.
objective (adj) موضوعي	- I learn from objective criticism.
profit	
profit (v) يستفيد	- Children profit from reading this book.
profit (n) فائدة	- There are profits for children who read this book.
profitable (adj) مفيد - مُربح	- Reading this book is profitable .
relevant	
relevance (n) ارتباط - عَلاَقة	- This book is of great relevance to children.
relevant (adj) ملائم - خَاصٌّ بِـ / مُتَّصِلٌ بِـ / مُتَعَلِّقٌ بِـ	- This book is relevant to children.
specific	
specifics (n) تفاصيل - مُتَعَلِّقَات	- I am not ready to talk about the specifics of the situation now.
specific (adj) تفصيلي / دقيق - مُحَدَّد	- He gave us specific orders.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a passion for	شَغَف بِـ	ever since	منذ (ذلك الحين)
a wide range of	مجال واسع من	get over my fear	أتغلب على خوفي
as possible	قدر الإمكان	in front of	أمام
be passionate about	متحمّس بشأن	in public	علي الملأ - في العلن
be related to	مُرتبط بِـ	live in my memory	تظل في ذاكرتي
be relevant to	ملائم لـ	once a week	مرة واحدة في الأسبوع

be unlikely to by this time next month depending on	ليس من الوارد أن في مثل هذا الوقت من الشهر القادم علي حسب	start your own business time limit	تبدأ مشروعك الخاص الحد الزمني
---	---	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

depend on donate ... to fit in get over	يعتمد علي يتبرع بـ ... لـ يشارك في - يُجرب يتغلب علي	give up look after record ... on talk to	يتخلى عن - يتوقف عن يرعى يسجل ... علي يتحدث إلي / مع
--	---	---	---

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

entrepreneur - organisation man / woman

- **entrepreneur (n)** رائد أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار جديدة وينفذها)
- The success of the company depends on **entrepreneurs**.
- **organisation man / woman (n)** شخص تنفيذي (مطيع وينفذ الأوامر والتكليفات فقط)
- The success of the company needs entrepreneurs as well as **organisation men**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Poodles are said to be smart dogs." The antonym of "smart" is
(امتحان الكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة المسائية)
a. clever b. dull c. brilliant d. intelligent
2. One is very happy when they their objectives.
a. meet b. set c. achieve d. a & c
3. I was playing when you called me.
a. an invention b. a song c. an objective d. a charity
4. This plan has
a. ourselves goals b. an invention c. the guitar d. smart goals

5. "Be specific in the instructions you give to your staff." In this sentence, the adjective 'specific' is an antonym of
 a. non-specific b. accurate c. exact d. clear
6. It is impossible to your goals without patience and great will.
 (امتحان إلكتروني ٢٠٢٢ - الفترة الصباحية)
 a. score b. lose c. sit d. reach
7. Successful people themselves goals.
 a. reach b. achieve c. set d. have
8. Mr Ayman a good presentation yesterday.
 a. gave b. broke c. set d. spoke
9. He travelled to the USA in 2017. I haven't seen him since.
 a. ever b. never c. ago d. before
10. One of my dreams is to give smoking.
 a. of b. out c. up d. by
11. It is not right to punish children public.
 a. to b. about c. at d. in
12. He gave us information about his new plan.
 a. profit b. profitable c. specific d. specifics
13. He told us about the of his new plan.
 a. profit b. profitable c. specific d. specifics
14. I am sure he will find this objective easily
 a. achieve b. achievable c. achievement d. achiever
15. I am sure he will find the of this objective easy.
 a. achieve b. achievable c. achievement d. achiever
16. What she said has no clear to the topic in hand.
 a. relevance b. relevant c. entrepreneur d. entrepreneurial
17. Water is a liquid.
 a. measures b. measurement c. measurable d. measuring

Part IV

Language

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى who / which / whom / that

- ١ تشير (who / that) الى فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:
- I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.
 - Teachers are people who / that work at schools.
- ٢ تشير (who / whom / that) الى مفعول عاقل فى حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفها:
- The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
 - = The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
- ٣ تشير (which / that) الى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل وفى هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفها:
- The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.
- ٤ تشير (which / that) الى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفها:
- The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.
 - The car I bought has a problem with the engine.
- ٥ لا تستخدم (that) كضمير وصل فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أي فى بداية عبارة موصولة بين (...و) :
- Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (Not: that is....)
 - Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)
- ٦ بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :
- أ. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما فى نهاية عبارة الوصل:
- This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)
 - This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)
- ب. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :
- This is my friend whom I play tennis with.
 - = This is my friend with whom I play tennis.
 - This is the motorbike which I go to school on.
 - = - This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

2 حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى where

- ١ تعود (where) على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:
- This is the room where I sleep.
 - She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic literature.

٢ لاحظ أن:

- **where** = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + **which**) / (**which** + ... (حرف جر مناسب للمكان)
- This is the room **in which** I sleep.
- This is the room **which** I sleep in.

٣ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجمله الوصل - لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- This is **the house where** we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)
- This is **the house which** we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (**where**):

- I went to the room **in which** I sleep. (Not: the room **in where**)
- I went to the room **which** I sleep **in**. (Not: the room **where** in)

3 حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت when

١ تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- 2012 is **the year when** Rodayna was born.
- Friday is **the day when** we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is **the time when** I return home from school.
- **when** = (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + **which**) / (**which** + ... (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني)
- 2012 is **the year in which** Rodayna was born.
- = - 2012 is **the year which** Rodayna was born **in**.
- Friday is **the day on which** we don't go to school.
- = - Friday is **the day which** we don't go to school **on**.
- Two o'clock is **the time at which** I get up.
- = - Two o'clock is **the time which** I get up **at**.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which** / **that**) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجمله الوصل - لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- August is **the month when** we go to Alexandria.
- = We **go to Alexandria in August**.
- August is **the month which** we spend in Alexandria.
- = We **spend August in Alexandria**.

٣ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (**when**):

- Friday is **the day on which** my son was born. (Not: the **day on when**)
- Friday is **the day which** my son was born **on**. (Not: the **day when** on)

4 whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل):

- I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

- انتبه عند استخدام (whose) لبعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم مثل :

- stay / يستورد / واردات imports - يدفع / راتب pay - يزور / زيارة visit - يقيم / إقامة stay
- exports / يكره / الأشياء غير المحببة dislikes - يحب / الأشياء المحببة likes - يُصدر / صادرات exports
- cause / etc. ... يصمم / تصميم design - يسبب / سبب cause
- He is an architect whose designs are fantastic.
- China is a country whose exports are more than its imports.

لاحظ أن :

- who / which / that + have / has = whose + noun اسم = with + (صفة) + noun اسم
- The boy who has blue eyes is Spanish.
- The boy whose eyes are blue is Spanish.
- The boy with blue eyes is Spanish.

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

❶ لا يتم ذكر ضمير يعود على نفس الاسم الذي يشير إليه ضمير الوصل:

- This is my friend who I go to school with him. (X)
- This is my friend who I go to school with. (✓)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student there. (X)
- I go to a secondary school where I am a student. (✓)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought it. (X)
- This is the villa which my uncle bought. (✓)

❷ هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل:

أ. تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (و) :

- The man who/that lives next door works in a bank.

ب. لا تحدد جملة الوصل الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل تعطي معلومة شائعة وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (و) :

- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is where I was born.

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات للمتفوقين

❶ يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. يتم حذف كل من (who - which - whom) عندما يحلون محل مفعول (أي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

- This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبنى للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (inf.+ing) :

- The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل:

- The criminal who was arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

- The criminal arrested yesterday is very dangerous.

٢ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second / the last / the only.....

- I was the first person who left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

٢ يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل للدلالة على الغرض مثل:

- He has some books that he wants to read.

= He has some books to read.

٤ يمكن أن يأتي فعل بعد (whom) إذا جاء قبلها أحد التعبيرات الآتية :

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of, much of.....

- The house was full of boys, ten of whom are my cousins.

General Exercise

On Language

Apply

• التدريبات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تنويه

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is the shop owner wants to marry my sister.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a & c
- My father welcomed my friends I invited to my birthday.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
- I respect the employer for I work.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a & c
- I respect the employer I work for.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c

5. The car I bought for my wife is small in size,
a. which b. that c. a & b d. whom
6. The car in I go to school is modern.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. whom
7. El-Shennawy, is the captain of the team, made Mo'men Zakaria raise the cup.
a. that b. who c. which d. a & b
8. The gold medal, is given to the winner, has the championship logo on it.
a. that b. who c. which d. a & c
9. I like the village I live.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. where
10. I like the village I visit every summer.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. where
11. I like the village has a fantastic scenery.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. where
12. The school, students learn, is very important.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. where
13. The school, my children attend, is near our house.
a. which b. that c. a & b d. where
14. The house I was brought up was made from mud bricks.
a. where b. in which c. a & b d. which
15. The house in I was brought up was made from mud bricks.
a. where b. which c. a & b d. that
16. The house I was brought up in was made from mud bricks.
a. that b. which c. a & b d. where
17. Nine o'clock is the time my children go to bed at.
a. when b. which c. where d. b & c
18. Nine o'clock is the time at my children go to bed.
a. when b. which c. where d. b & c

19. Nine o'clock is the time my children go to bed.
 a. at when b. at which c. at that d. a & c
20. Spring is the season is full of green colour and flowers.
 a. when b. in which c. which d. where
21. The house door is black belongs to my uncle.
 a. where b. in which c. whose d. who's
22. The old man hands shake is my grandfather.
 a. whose b. who's c. that's d. with
23. The old man the shaking hands is my grandfather
 a. whose b. who's c. that's d. with
24. The engineer designs are ecofriendly has become very popular.
 a. who b. whose c. that d. a & c
25. The engineer designs ecofriendly factories has become very popular.
 a. who b. whose c. that d. a & c
26. This is the man whose flat
 a. bought b. I bought c. I bought it d. buying
27. This is the girl my brother wants to marry.
 a. who b. that c. no pronoun d. a, b & c
28. The man a black bag is my new neighbour.
 a. is carrying b. carrying c. who he is carrying d. carried
29. The bridge across the Nile is very important.
 a. built b. building c. is built d. is building
30. Sama was the third student the class.
 a. to enter b. that entered c. a & b d. was entered
31. I have a lot of goals
 a. which I want to achieve b. which I want to achieve them
 c. to achieve d. a & c
32. I have three cousins, two of are pilots.
 a. whom b. whose c. who d. that



Part

I

Vocabulary

• لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

accessories(n)	مُلَحَقَاتُ إِضَافِيَّة	local(adj)	محلي
come across (phr. v)	يصادف	minor(adj)	ثانوي
crawl(ed) (v)	يزحف - يجر	outfit(n)	طقم (ملابس)
global(adj)	عالمي	range(n)	مجال - سلسلة

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تنويه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

access(n)	مدخل - إتاحة	loss(n)	فقدان - خسارة
accessible(adj)	سهل المنال - متاح	major(adj)	أساسي/رئيسي
afford(ed) (v)	يتحمل تكلفة	matching(adj)	متوافق
amongst(adv)	بين	motivated(adj)	متحفز
attach(ed) (v)	يربط - يوصل	neighbourhood(n)	حي - منطقة سكنية
attend(ed) (v)	يَحْضُر	non-	غير حكومي
benefit(ed) (v)	يُفيد	governmental(adj)	عملية جراحية
bleeding(n)	التزيف	operation(n)	خيار - أحد بدائل
boil(ed) (v)	يغلي	option(n)	مؤسسة - عملية التنظيم
breakthrough(n)	طفرة/إنجاز	organisation(n)	يُنظِم
collection(n)	مجموعة	organise(d) (v)	المنظمون
competition(n)	مسابقة	organisers(n)	يُلخّص - يوجز
corn cob(n)	كوز الذرة	outline(ed) (v)	في المُجمل - ككل
create(d) (v)	يبتكر	overall(adv)	تعمل بالدواصة
deaths(n)	الوفيات	pedal-powered(adj)	نسبة مئوية
device(n)	جهاز	percentage(n)	دوائي
display(ed) (v)	يعرض	pharmaceutical(adj)	عملي - تطبيقي
dried(adj)	مُجفّف	practical(adj)	يُعْرض - يُقدّم
effort(n)	جهد - مجهود	present(ed) (v)	غرض - هدف
ensure(d) (v)	يؤكد - يضمن	purpose(n)	

entry(n)	دخلة - دخول	recycle(d) (v)	يُعيد تدوير
everyday (adj)	يومي	reduce(d) (v)	يُقلل
expand(ed) (v)	يتوسع - يمتد	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل
fast(n)	الصيام	sell - sold (v)	يحقق مبيعات - يبيع
filter(ed) (n - v)	مُرشّح - يُنقى	selling point	عامل جذب للسلعة
governmental(adj)	حكومي	sleepsuit(n)	بدلة نوم (سلوبيت)
improve(d) (v)	يُحسن	solution(n)	حل
improvements(n)	تحسينات	sort(ed) out (phr. v)	يفرز - يُعد
innovation(n)	الابتكار	unique(adj)	فريد - مميز
interest(n)	اهتمام	variety(n)	التنوع - التعددية
joint (adj)	مشارك - مرتبط	venue(n)	قاعة مناسبات
life-changing(adj)	مُغيّر للحياة	vote(d) (v)	يُصوّت (في انتخابات)
liquid (n - adj)	سائل	well-organised(adj)	حَسَن التنظيم

• تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

تنويه

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
accessories(n) مُلحقات إضافية	bags, hats and shoes which match مع تنمashi with clothes .
come across (phr. v) يصادف	to discover something usually by accident بالصدفة
crawl(ed) (v) يزحف	to walk on your hands and knees
outfit(n) طقم (ملابس)	a set مجموعة of clothes worn together, especially for a special occasion مناسبة
range(n) تنوع - سلسلة - مجال	a synonym مرادف for 'variety'

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Pollution is a/an issue. The whole world is involved.
 - achievable
 - global
 - relevant
 - non-governmental

2. I've bought a great new to wear for Sham El-Nassim.
a. recipe b. range c. accessories d. outfit
3. When I was looking for my club ID, I a black and white photo of my great grandfather.
a. came across b. got over c. invented d. sorted out
4. The baby lazily out of bed.
a. resigned b. tricked c. crawled d. adapted
5. This clothes shop has a wide of fashionable summer clothes.
a. recipe b. range c. accessories d. outfit
6. This online store has all the home you could imagine.
a. recipe b. range c. accessories d. outfit
7. The hospital lacks a lot of services, so I had to go to the central one.
a. local b. global c. measurable d. achievable
8. This is a/an problem; let's look into major ones.
a. main b. essential c. important d. minor

2 Important vocabulary

9. It is a national duty واجب وطني to in the elections. الانتخابات
a. recycle b. ensure c. sort out d. vote
10. Cheap price is a good
a. venue b. fast c. selling point d. death
11. Good health care must be affordable and to all citizens.
a. accessible b. pharmaceutical
c. non-governmental d. motivated
12. The of the final match made all the fans angry.
a. law b. trick c. treason d. loss
13. I bought a green for my little sister.
a. stretcher b. honeybee c. corn cob d. sleepsuit
14. Charities are organisations that depend on donations.
a. non-governmental b. achievable
c. non-essential d. measurable
15. Riding a bike is environmentally friendly and it also helps you keep fit.
a. joint b. pedal-powered c. unique d. well-organised

16. The bridegroom العريس booked a by the Nile.
 a. venue b. fast c. selling point d. death
17. There has been a/an in the treatment of C virus.
 a. access b. neighbourhood c. breakthrough d. outline
18. It is safe to drink water. It is pure.
 a. filter b. filtered c. experience d. experienced
19. When metals are heated, they
 a. donate b. consider c. create d. expand
20. The two friends wore outfits for the party.
 a. passion b. non-essential c. matching d. pedal powered
21. Plastic bottles and broken glass are collected to be
 a. recycled b. ensured c. sorted out d. voted
22. I ate some dates البلح to break my
 a. fast b. venue c. selling point d. death
23. Tablets are products.
 a. accessible b. pharmaceutical
 c. non-governmental d. governmental
24. The second section provides a/an of the history of the pharaohs.
 a. access b. neighbourhood
 c. breakthrough d. outline
25. While I was walking by the Nile, I saw a man selling corn
 a. stretchers b. honeybees c. cobs d. sleepsuits
26. The of the festival did their best to make it as perfect as possible.
 a. finalists b. organisers c. presidents d. inhabitants
27. Controlling COVID-19 pandemic جائحة needed effort between governmental and non-governmental organisations.
 a. age b. aged c. join d. joint
28. Children must have to healthy nutrition.
 a. access b. neighbourhood
 c. breakthrough d. outline
29. The good news is that there are no in the accident.
 a. venues b. fasts c. selling points d. deaths
30. I've the things that will be thrown away.
 a. attended b. sorted out c. benefited d. voted

3 Definitions

31. means bags, hats and shoes which match with clothes.
a. Accessories b. Honeybees c. Profits d. Entrepreneurs
32. To is to walk on your hands and knees.
a. introduce b. crawl c. come across d. include
33. To is to discover something usually by accident.
a. introduce b. crawl c. come across d. include
34. A/An is a set of clothes worn together, especially for a special occasion.
a. recipe b. range c. profit d. outfit
35. The noun '.....' is a synonym for 'variety'.
a. recipe b. range c. profit d. outfit

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	a great success ينجح نجاحاً باهراً	gain	access to قادر علي الوصول إلي
break	fast يفطر (بعد الصيام)	have	specific aims لديه أهداف محددة
build	a machine يصنع آلة	lose	blood ينزف دم
create	electricity يُولد كهرباء	make	a difference to يُحسن
	an invention يخترع		a simple device يصنع جهاز بسيط
	real solutions يُوجد حلول حقيقية		recommendations بوصي به - يُزكي
display	an invention يعرض اختراع	offer	a wide range of experiences يُتيح مجال واسع من التجارب
enter	a competition يدخل مسابقة		practical solutions يُقدّم حلول عملية
experience	a problem يمر بمشكلة	stay	healthy يبقي بصحة جيدة

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a solution for/to	حل ل	get lots of interest in	يجد اهتمام كبير بـ
a synonym for	مرادف ل	have experience with	لديه خبرة بـ
aged between ... and ...	يتراوح عمره بين ... و ...	joint effort	جهد مشترك
be available to / for	مُتاح ل	on the side of	علي جانب
be guilty of	مُذنب بـ / مُدان بـ	the second most common cause of	ثاني أكثر أسباب ... شيوعاً
by accident	بالصدفة	unique selling point	عامل جذب فريد للسلعة
dairy products	مُنتجات البان	well-organised	حَسَن التنظيم
due to	بسبب	with the help of	بمساعدة
everyday problems	المشكلات اليومية		
fruity dessert	حلوي من الفاكهة		

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

afford to	يتحمّل تكلفة أن	organise for	يُرتّب ل
aim at	يهدف إلي	prove ... to	يُثبت ... ل
arrest ... for	يقبض علي ... بسبب	punish ... for	يعاقب ... بسبب
attach ... to	يربط ... بـ - يُلحق ... بـ	sort out	يفرز - يُنظم
carry out	يُنفذ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
crawl around	يزحف حول	succeed in	ينجح في
die from	يموت بسبب	trick ... into	يخدع ... ليقوم بـ
educate ... about	يُعلم ... عن	vote for	يُصوّت لصالح
match with	يناسب - يلائم		

4 Add to your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

عندما تقرأ (SMART goals) تدرك علي الفور أن معناها (الأهداف الذكية) وذلك صحيح بالطبع، لكن لاحظ ما ترمز إليه حروف كلمة (SMART) والتي تمثل أيضا الخصائص الخمسة للأهداف الذكية:

الأهداف الذكية SMART goals



clear واضح, concise مُحدّد, tangible واضح, what, who, when, why, where ?

M
Measurable
قابلية للقياس

→ time, money, volume **الكم**, how much or how many ?

A
Achievable
يمكن تحقيقها

→ Goals should be challenging **تحدي**, but not impossible.

R
Relevant
ملائمة

→ Goals should be consistent **متناغم** with other long-term goals.

T
Time-Bound
لها إطار زمني

→ Create a time frame. **إطار** When to achieve the result.

5

Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

accessory - access

- **accessory (n)** إكسسوار - ملحقات - مستلزمات
- This shop sells car **accessories**.
- **access (to) (n)** صلاحية (حق الدخول إلى مكان أو استخدام شيء أو رؤية شخص... إلخ)
- As the secretary of the manager, she has **access** to all files on his laptop.
- **access (to) (n)** ممر / مدخل
- **Access** to the kitchen of the restaurant is through the back door.
- **have access to (a car / a mobile / a computer, etc.)**
لديه (سيارة / موبايل / كمبيوتر... إلخ) يمكنه استخدامه
- He has **access** to the computer network of the bank.

organisation

- **organisation (n)** منظمة / مؤسسة (اسم معنود)
- Some non-governmental **organisations** help the poor.
- **organisation (n)** عملية التنظيم / الترتيب (اسم غير معنود)
- This meeting lacks good **organisation**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A good team member practical solutions to the problems the team face.
a. offers b. creates c. experiences d. a & b
2. He managed to make
a. blood b. an advice c. different d. a difference
3. This product will be available us to buy soon.
a. in b. at c. on d. to
4. I ate some dates to a 15-hour fast.
a. give b. break c. set d. have
5. She thought carefully before she a wonderful recommendation.
a. took b. experienced c. felt d. made
6. Successful students specific aims to achieve.
a. reach b. gain c. have d. speak
7. When you a problem, you should keep calm and think carefully.
a. offer b. experience c. gain d. make
8. The high-pixel camera and the powerful processor are the unique points of this tablet.
a. sells b. sold c. selling d. to sell
9. Not all people can afford their children to international schools.
a. sending b. send c. to sending d. to send
10. Most American citizens voted Joe Biden in the 2020 elections.
a. of b. for c. in d. on
11. The dishonest seller tricked me paying more money for the shirt than it really deserves.
a. into b. onto c. in d. for
12. Students join secondary school after prep three, between 15 and 16.
a. aging b. aged c. at age d. in age
13. Don't expect such an to change the routine. He only does what he is asked to do.
a. organisation b. organisations
c. organisation man d. entrepreneur
14. The party needs too much
a. organisation b. organisations
c. organisation man d. entrepreneur

Part IV Language

• راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني. تنويه

Exercise On Language

● Apply

• التدريبات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم. تنويه

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- The man clothes are made of wool feels warm.
a. which b. that c. who d. whose
- Cairo, we live, is the largest city in Egypt.
a. whom b. which c. when d. where
- From here we can see the mountain we climbed.
a. whose b. which c. who d. what
- The house is on the top of the hill was built 5 years ago .
a. where b. who c. what d. which
- Our exports, include cotton and metal goods, come from all over Egypt.
a. where b. whose c. which d. that
- A supermarket is a large shop you can buy many different things.
a. which b. when c. what d. where
- A supermarket is a large shop you can buy many different things from.
a. which b. when c. what d. where
- Please, arrange a time we can meet for a few hours.
a. which b. where c. whose d. when
- Please, arrange a time at we can meet for a few hours.
a. which b. where c. whose d. when
- I spent three hours reading the reports Radwa had sent.
a. whose b. that c. who d. who's
- The neighbours have just moved into the next flat are a newly-married couple.
a. which b. who c. what d. where
- The first one I spoke to today was you, Ahmed.
a. whose b. that c. what d. when
- These are the people car has been stolen.
a. who b. which c. whose d. whom

14. Is that the flat was advertised in the paper last week?
 a. where b. which c. when d. what
15. Egypt is the land people of different cultures can live peacefully.
 a. who b. whose c. where d. which
16. Hawaii, consists of 8 principal islands, is a favourite vacation spot.
 a. where b. who c. that d. which
17. The house I grew up was very small.
 a. where b. who c. what d. which
18. The house I grew up in was very small.
 a. where b. who c. what d. which
19. Do you remember the day we moved to the new house?
 a. which b. who c. where d. when

2 Special cases

20. The man to hospital doesn't have dangerous injuries.
 a. is taken b. taken c. taking d. is taking
21. I'm saving up for the mobile phone advertised on TV.
 a. where I saw b. which I saw it c. where I saw it d. that I saw
22. Omar is the fifth the office.
 a. reach b. to reach c. is reaching d. reached
23. Rodayna, dislikes are the same as mine, is my best friend.
 a. who b. whom c. whose d. that
24. The necklace at the party was made of glass.
 a. which lost b. that loses c. she lost d. that lost
25. The flat the green balcony is mine.
 a. where b. which c. whose d. with
26. Have you tried the coffee ?
 a. Sama prepares it b. which Sama prepares it
 c. Sama prepare d. which Sama prepares
27. The man whom you is my teacher.
 a. have greeted him b. are greeted c. greeted him d. greeted
28. My parents, help is necessary to me, are old people.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. whose
29. The drinks in this café are all high quality.
 a. sold b. are sold c. which sell d. sells
30. This is a story a group of boys are shipwrecked on an island.
 a. which b. for which c. in which d. at which
31. Rokaya has a cousin in this office.
 a. worked b. working c. is working d. works
32. Leen was the only classmate my sister's wedding.
 a. attends b. that attend c. to attend d. she attends

33. Over there is the mechanic's I usually have my car checked.
 a. where b. whom c. whose d. who
34. The woman the blue blouse is my aunt.
 a. with b. who c. that d. whose
35. This is the production manager pay is the highest in the company.
 a. whose b. who c. that d. whom
36. The place we went yesterday is just around the corner.
 a. to that b. which c. what d. to which
37. The final yesterday was boring.
 a. which played b. it played c. played d. was played
38. The player the most popularity in Egypt is Salah.
 a. who b. that c. with d. whose
39. They live in a flat the Nile.
 a. that overlook b. overlooks c. overlooking d. overlooked
40. He admires the English team
 a. which Salah plays b. Salah plays
 c. which Salah plays for it d. Salah plays for
41. I admire the officer the old man cross the street over there.
 a. to help b. helped c. helping d. is helping
42. Can you suggest a time at I can visit you?
 a. that b. which c. where d. when
43. Messi was the last player the playground.
 a. was left b. left c. he left d. to leave
44. That is the French tourist stay needs to be extended.
 a. that b. whose c. whom d. who

3 Check your understanding

45. "August is the month when I go to Alexandria." This means
 a. August is the month which I go to Alexandria.
 b. August is the month at which I go to Alexandria.
 c. August is the month which I go to Alexandria in.
 d. August is the month on which I go to Alexandria.
46. "My car is the one with the silver colour." This means
 a. I have one silver car.
 b. There is only one silver car that we can see right now.
 c. There's only one car we can see.
 d. I have more than one car.
47. "Old people need our help." This means
 a. It is old people that need our help.
 b. We need old people who can help us.
 c. Old people never need our help.
 d. It is us who need old people's help.

PART THREE

Play Vocabulary, Skills and Advanced exercises



Lessons 5 & 6

Part

I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية لمسرحية (King Lear)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب الفائقين

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من مسرحية (King Lear) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص المسرحية والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

treason (n)	خيانة	tear up (phr.v)	يمزق
liar (n)	كاذب	laws (n)	قوانين
stretcher (n)	نقالة	my heart is heavy	قلبي حزين
resign(ed) (v)	يستقيل	guilty (adj)	مذنب

Exercises

On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He because he didn't make enough money from that job.
a. resigned b. tricked c. crawled d. adapted
2. is a crime against your country.
a. Competition b. Fight c. Treason d. Patriotism
3. The injured man was carried on a to the ambulance.
a. stretcher b. honeybee c. corn cob d. sleepsuit
4. is the rules that everyone must follow in your country.
a. Competition b. Law c. Struggle d. Patriotism
5. A / An is someone who does not tell the truth.
a. entrepreneur b. presenter c. organiser d. liar
6. The child up a hundred-pound banknote and threw the pieces away.
a. tore b. sorted c. set d. looked
7. To is to fool someone into doing something .
a. trust b. fight c. trick d. tear
8. He was of helping a criminal.
a. cause b. guilty c. reason d. liar
9. The criminal was arrested murder جريمة قتل
a. as b. by c. from d. for
10. Criminals are for breaking the law.
a. tricked b. punished c. honoured d. greeted

Part II

Grammatical Hints

sell

•sell – sold (v)

بيع

- This shop **sells** high-quality food products.

•sell – sold (v)

يحقق مبيعات

- Korean cars **sell** well in Egypt.

make + obj. + inf. / adj.

•make + مفعول + inf.

يجعل / يجبر

- My father **made** me **water** the trees in the garden.

•make + مفعول + adj.

يجعل

- Good news **makes** us **happy**.

well-known

•well-known to + شخص

معروف لدى

- Mohammed Salah is **well-known to** all Egyptians.

•well-known for + (inf.+ ing) / n.

مشهور بـ

- My father is **well-known for** his kind heart.
- My daughter is **well-known for** giving good speeches.

•well-known as + n.

مشهور كـ

- Mohammed Salah is **well-known as** a footballer.

The reason

•the reason for + noun/(inf. + ing) = the reason (why) + جملة السبب في

- Do you know the **reason for** his anger?
- Do you know the **reason (why)** he is angry?

•The reason be that + جملة

السبب في ... هو أن ...

- The **reason for** his sadness **is that** he failed the driving test.
- The **reason why** she arrived late **was that** she had missed the train.

What ... be that ما ... هو أن

- **What made** us happy **was that** he came first.
- **What attracted** my attention **is that** he had red hair.
- **What is incredible is that** Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn.

but

يمكن استخدام (but) لربط صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين:

- She is **intelligent but lazy**. - She spoke **quickly but clearly**.

help**help + (obj.) + inf. / to + inf. / inf.**

- My mother **helps** me **to do** my homework.
= My mother **helps** me **do** my homework.
- This device can **help filter** the water.

everyday – every day• **everyday (adj)**

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الاسم)

- Going to the club is one of my **everyday** habits.

• **every day (adv)**

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

- I go to the club **every day**.

Exercise On Language Hints

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The reason his anger is that I broke his glasses.
a. for b. in c. why d. from
- The reason he is angry is that I have broken his glasses.
a. for b. in c. why d. from
- annoys me is that he always shouts unnecessarily.
a. For b. In c. Why d. What
- The way you talked to Yara made her
a. upset b. is upset c. feel upset d. a & c
- Mr Youssef is well-known a good teacher.
a. to b. as c. for d. at
- Mr Youssef is well-known his good teaching skills.
a. to b. as c. for d. at
- Mr Youssef is well-known all secondary school students in this area.
a. to b. as c. for d. at
- Rodayna is young wise.
a. and b. but c. so d. although
- Sea food well in coastal towns and cities.
a. is sold b. sells c. a & b d. be sold
- Sometimes, one gets tired of their routine.
a. today b. tonight c. every day d. everyday

Part III

Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Model essay

Write a paragraph of about (180) words on "What makes a successful person".

What makes a successful person

Success is the main goal of nearly all people. Everyone wants to be successful in their work and in their life in general. They try hard to achieve this goal. However, not all people are able to achieve it. How can it be possible for a person to be successful?

If you want to be successful, you must have a goal. This goal may be a good job, a nice home, a happy family, a simple life or anything else. A goal has to be reachable not imaginary. Moreover, you should have the abilities that allow you to reach it.

To achieve your goal, you should do your best. Never let anything stop or distract you. You must have determination. Determination gives you the strength needed to face the hardships you face.

You have to plan for your life. Planning makes you ready to step forward without wasting your time or effort. It also enables you to foresee possible obstacles عقبات and pass them. You also need to benefit from the experience of others. This helps you make less mistakes.

Finally and most importantly, do not care about negative criticism النقد الهدام. Give your ear to only positive criticism. Have faith in Allah and trust yourself. Be sure that your dreams will come true only when you want and do your best to achieve them.

2 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

You should always have a goal to pursue in life. If you don't know where you are going, you will probably end up somewhere else.

- أ. يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً هدف تسعى إليه في الحياة. إذا كنت لا تعرف إلى أين أنت ذاهب ، فليس من المحتمل أن ينتهي بك الأمر في مكان آخر.
- ب. يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً حياة تسعى إليه في الهدف. إذا كنت لا تعرف إلى أين أنت ذاهب ، فمن الجائز أن ينتهي بك الأمر في مكان آخر.
- ج. يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً هدف تسعى إليه في الحياة. إذا كنت لا تعرف إلى أين أنت ذاهب ، فمن الجائز أن ينتهي بك الأمر في مكان آخر.
- د. يجب أن يكون لديك دائماً هدف تسعى إليه في الحياة. إذا كنت لا تعرف إلى أين أنت ذاهب ، فمن الجائز أن ينتهي بك الأمر في نفس المكان.

② Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

الإنسان الناجح لا يصل للنجاح بالصدفة، لكنه يفكر جيداً ويضع لنفسه أهدافاً تناسب قدراته ويسعى لتحقيقها بشكل مُنظم ومُدروس وفي مدى زمني محدد.

- A succeeded person does not reach success by luck, but they think well and set themselves goals that suit their abilities and seek to achieve them in an organized and thoughtful manner and within a specific time frame.
- A successful person does not reach success by luck, but they think well and set themselves goals that suit their abilities and seek to achieve them in an organized and studied manner and within a specific time frame.
- A successful person does not reach to success by change, but they think well and set themselves goals that suits their abilities and seek to achieve them in an organized and studied manner and within a specific time frame.
- A successful person does not reach success by chance, but they think well and set themselves goals that suit their abilities and seek to achieve them in an organized and thoughtful manner and within a special time farm.

Part IV Just for Advanced Level

للفائقين فقط

الجزء التالي والتدريبات التي تليه خاص بالمستويات العليا

تنويه

achieve

• **achieve(d) (v)**

يحقق - ينجز

- Sama **achieved** great success learning new language skills.

• **achievement (n)**

إنجاز - نجاح - تحصيل

- This exam measures your **achievements** in maths.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- crowning / supreme achievement

أعظم إنجاز

- outstanding / remarkable achievement

إنجاز بارز

- underachievement

إنجاز دون المستوى

≠ overachievement

منجز - ناجح

• **achiever (n)**

- A teacher should help his students become **achievers**.

- underachiever

متفوق

≠ overachiever

مقصر - دون المستوى

• **achievable (adj)**

ممکن إنجازه

- A good goal is **achievable**, not imaginary.

come across

• **come across = encounter (phr. v)** يصادف (يقابل أو يجد أو يكتشف بالصدفة دون ترتيب)

- While I was in Paris, I **came across** an old schoolmate.

- Rokaya **came across** an old photo album in her desk.

• **come across = come over (phr. v)** يبدو كأنه / يوحى بأنه - يظهر بمظهر طيب

- Omar **comes across** as a very intelligent gentleman.

- She **came across** very well in the interview.

measure

• **measure (in) (v)**

يقيس (حجم - طول - كمية)

- Try to **measure** the amount of petrol we need for the journey.

- We **measure** long distances **in** kilometres or miles.

يبلغ مقاسه

• **measure (d) (v)**

- This villa **measures** 35 × 43.

• **measure = step (n)**

إجراء - خطوة تنفيذية

- We have to take the right **measures** to face the traffic problem.

• **measurement (n)**

مقاس (طول - حجم - مقدار) (اسم معدود)

- What is the **measurement** of your feet ?

- The tailor **took** my **measurements**.

• **measurement (n)**

عملية القياس (اسم غير معدود)

- The **measurement** of body temperature is necessary every three hours.

• **measurable = noticeable (adj)**

ملحوظ - بارز - هام

- The new law has had a **measurable** effect on traffic flow.

• **measurable (adj) قابل للقياس ≠ immeasurable**

- Suffering is not **measurable**. = Suffering is **immeasurable**.

relevant

• **relevant (to) (adj)** غير مرتبط بـ **irrelevant** خاص بـ / متصل بـ / متعلق بـ

- Some laws which were made long ago are not **relevant** to modern societies.

• **relevance (n)** عدم الملاءمة - انعدام الصلة **irrelevance** ملائمة / ارتباط

- What you say has no **relevance** to the problem we are discussing.

specific

• **specific (adj)** غير محدد **non-specific** محدد

- The students understand better when you give **specific** examples.

• **specific (adj)** غير دقيق - مبهم **non-specific / vague** تفصيلي / دقيق - واضح

- The **specific** operation instructions are written on the box.

• **specific to (adj)**

خاص بـ

- This disease is **specific to** old people.

• **specifics (n)**

التفاصيل

- I have told you the general idea, Now, let's move to the **specifics**.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The earthquake 7.2 on the Richter scale.
a. measured b. calculated c. sized d. sorted
- I asked the student to be about the problems he faces.
a. non-specific b. specific c. measurable d. immeasurable
- I was very happy because I had come very well in the job interview.
a. across b. over c. a & b d. to
- The conference wasn't a success due to poor
a. treason b. finalists c. solution d. organisation
- A villa with a direct to the sea is my dream house.
a. access b. objective c. range d. corn cob
- The energy in food is measured calories.
a. on b. in c. to d. from
- Children vocabulary through reading.
a. donates b. considers c. creates d. expands

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	المقياس (measure) هنا يعني (يبلغ مقياسه)
2.	b	محدد (be specific about) يعني (محدد بخصوص)
3.	c	يأتي بشكل جيد جداً (come across/over/very well) يعني
4.	d	المنظمة (poor organisation) يعني (المنظمة السيئة)
5.	a	مباشر (with a direct access to) يعني (تُطل مباشرة على)
6.	b	يُقاس بالكالوري (measured in calories) يعني
7.	d	اليعلى (expands) هنا يعني (يزداد)

Test on Unit 12


يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً

- Apply

- **Create**

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :



- 
1. After long years of hard work, I finally reached
a. a charity b. my goal
c. my objective d. b & c
 2. "He finds trading in spare parts profitable." Which of the following adjective is antonym for 'profitable'?
a. Profitless b. Useful c. Beneficial d. Rewarding
 3. Something that is is able to be measured.
a. immeasurable b. specific c. relevant d. measurable
 4. It is known that live in very organised groups.
a. stretchers b. honeybees c. corn cobs d. sleepsuits
 5. The efforts of the engineers and the workers played an important role in the success of the project.
a. joint b. pedal-powered
c. profitless d. irrelevant
 6. He is too young to such a difficult situation on his own.
a. filter b. weave c. experience d. pirate
 7. The company he works for imports cotton from Egypt.
a. when b. where c. which d. who
 8. The bus which I every day was very late today, so I missed my first class.
a. go to school b. go to on school
c. on go to school d. go to school on
 9. All my friends like the food in this restaurant.
a. serves b. is served
c. which it is served d. served
 10. The exam paper the least mistakes will get the best mark.
a. whose b. with c. which d. that
 11. We thanked the official المسئول visit solved a lot of problems in our area.
a. where b. to c. with d. whose
 12. I don't think much of the young people torn trousers.
a. wearing b. are wearing c. wear d. worn

- 2



AnyScanner

5. What are doodles ?
- Some meaningful lines
 - Some meaningful lines but have interpretations
 - Graphic lines with certain tools
 - Random lines and shapes
6. Where do people doodle? - On
- clothes
 - paper
 - air
 - water
7. What kind of things does a person draw to express tolerance ?
- A dead bird
 - A flying bird
 - A line
 - A circle
8. What would a person in prison draw ?
- Boxes within boxes
 - Squares
 - Triangles with squares
 - Circles

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

If you are passionate about a goal or dream of yours, then don't stop until you achieve it. Persistence in the face of adversities is what builds champions.

- إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة المحن لا يصنع الأبطال.
- لو كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف بعد تحقيقه. الإصرار في مواجهة الصعاب هو ما يصنع الأبطال.
- إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة الأحلام هو ما يصنع الأبطال.
- إذا كنت شغوفاً بهدف أو حلم لك ، فلا تتوقف حتى تحققه. الإصرار في مواجهة المحن هو ما يصنع الأبطال.

4 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

هناك معايير للهدف الجيد، وهي أن يكون محدداً وقابلًا للقياس ومن الممكن إنجازه، ولا بد أيضاً أن يكون الهدف ملائماً ومرتبطة بخطة زمنية.

- There are criteria for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- Their are criteria for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- There are criterion for a good goal. It must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.
- There are criteria for a good goal. They must be specific, measurable, and achievable. The goal must also be appropriate and linked to a time plan.

5 Write an essay of about 180 words on :

'The qualities of good future goals'

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب علي التقييمات الشهرية في بنك الأسئلة.

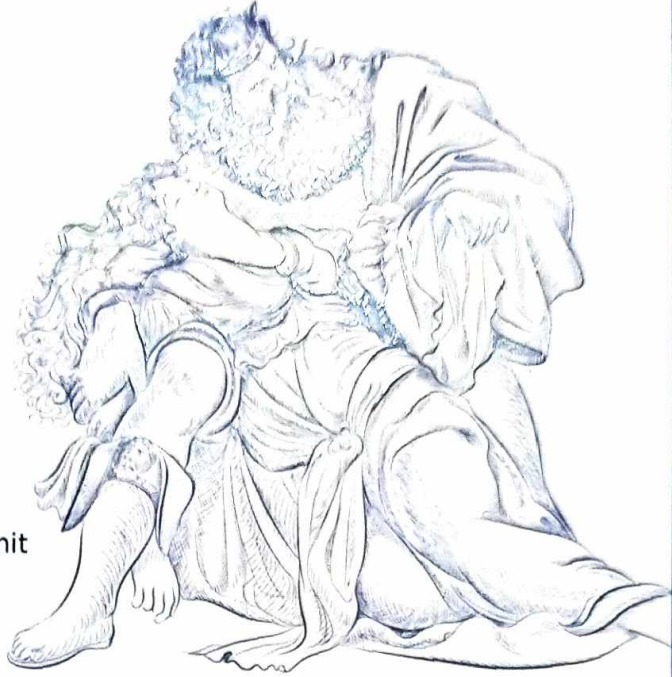
تنويه

New Hello!

& King Lear

In this book ...

- A detailed explanation for each unit divided into lessons (Vocabulary, Structures & Language skills).
- Exercises on each two lessons (Vocabulary, Structures & Language skills).
- A sample test on each unit.
- King Lear.



• أدخل كودك الشخصي
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف
• لمزيد من المعلومات
انظر صفحتي ٤, ٥



NOW

El-Moasser in Maths & French
for Secondary Stage

يُصرف مجاناً مع هذا الكتاب
ملحق Questions Bank

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

2nd
Sec.
2023
SECOND TERM



AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014



/ElMoasser.eg

